

Owner's Manual
for Vehicle



The Ultimate
Driving Machine



فارما سوس فارما

تلفن: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

525i **Owner's Manual for Vehicle**

530i Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a BMW.

550i Thorough familiarity with your vehicle will provide you with enhanced control and security when you drive it. We therefore have this request:

525xi Please take the time to read this Owner's Manual and familiarize
530xi yourself with the information that we have compiled for you before starting off in your new vehicle. It contains important data and instructions intended to assist you in gaining maximum use and satisfaction from your BMW's unique range of technical features. The manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance operating safety and contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW throughout an extended service life.

This manual is supplemented by a Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or a Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

© 2006 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts,
only with the written consent of
BMW AG, Munich.
Order No. 01 41 0 012 211
US English II/06, 06 03 500
Printed in Germany
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Contents

The fastest way to find specific topics is to use the index, refer to page 236.

Using this Owner's Manual

- 4 Notes
- 7 Reporting safety defects

At a glance

- 10 Cockpit
- 16 iDrive
- 22 Voice command system

Controls

- 28 Opening and closing
- 45 Adjustments
- 54 Transporting children safely
- 58 Driving
- 74 Everything under control
- 85 Technology for comfort, convenience and safety
- 101 Lamps
- 105 Climate
- 111 Practical interior accessories

Driving tips

- 124 Things to remember when driving

Navigation

- 132 Starting navigation system
- 133 Destination entry
- 144 Destination guidance
- 149 What to do if ...

Entertainment

- 152 On/off and tone
- 156 Radio
- 165 CD player and CD changer
- 171 External audio device

Communications

- 174 Telephoning
- 187 TeleService, BMW Assist

Mobility

- 194 Refueling
- 196 Wheels and tires
- 204 Under the hood
- 209 Maintenance
- 211 Replacing components
- 219 Giving and receiving assistance

Reference

- 226 Technical data
- 231 Short commands of voice command system
- 236 Everything from A to Z

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

We have made every effort to ensure that you are able to find what you need in this Owner's Manual as quickly as possible. The fastest way to find specific topics is to refer to the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.


Should you sell your BMW some day, please remember to hand over the Owner's Manual as well; it is an important component of your vehicle.


Additional sources of information


Should you have any other questions, your BMW center will be glad to advise you at any time.

You can find information on BMW, e.g. on technology, on the Internet at www.bmwusa.com.

Symbols used

 Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

 Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.

 Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.


* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional extras, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

)...< Verbal instructions to use with the voice command system.

>>...<< Identifies the answers generated by the voice command system.

Symbols on vehicle components

 Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

The individual vehicle

When purchasing your BMW, you have decided in favor of a model with individualized equipment and features. This Owner's Manual describes the entire array of options and equipment available with a specific BMW model.

Please bear in mind that the manual may contain information on accessories and equipment that you have not specified for your own vehicle. Sections describing options and special equipment are marked by asterisks * to assist you in identifying possible differences between the descriptions in this manual and your own vehicle's equipment.

If equipment in your BMW is not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the accompanying Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Editorial notice

BMW pursues a policy of continuous, ongoing development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards combined with advanced, state-of-the-art technology. For this reason, it is possible that the features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

For your own safety


Maintenance and repairs



Advanced technology, e.g. the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. Therefore, have corresponding work on your BMW performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. ◀

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Parts and accessories

 For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW.

When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.


BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.

BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW.

BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation or its occupants.


Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers.

Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information. ◀

 Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part. ◀

California Proposition 65 Warning

California law requires us to issue the following warning:

 Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling.

Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. ◀

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly.

Your BMW is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following applies only to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-800-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll free hotline 1-800-333-0510, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa ON K1A 0N5.



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

At a glance

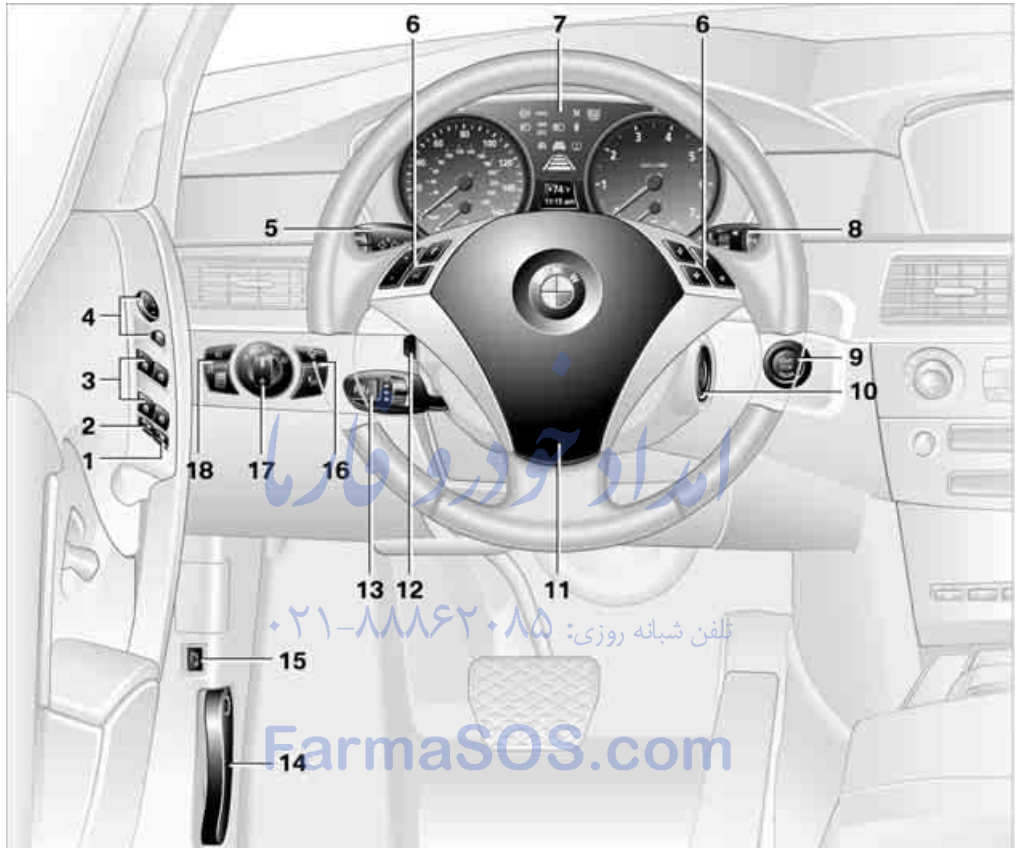
This overview of buttons, switches and displays is intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's operating environment. The section will also assist you in becoming acquainted with the control concepts and options available for operating the various systems.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵





FarmaSOS.com

Cockpit

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



- 1 Sedan: sun blind* for rear window 112
- 2 Rear window safety switch 41
- 3 Opening and closing windows 40
- 4 Adjusting exterior mirror 51
Automatic parking function* 52

- 5  Turn signal 64
-  High beams,
headlamp flasher 102
-  High-beam assistant* 103
-  Roadside parking lamps 102
- CHECK Check Control 79
- BC Computer 75

6 Buttons on steering wheel



Mobile phone* 174:

- ▶ Press: accepting and ending call, starting dialing* for selected phone number and redialing if no phone number is selected
- ▶ Press longer: redialing



Volume



Activating/deactivating voice command system* 22



Changing radio station



Selecting music track



Scrolling in phone book and in lists with stored phone numbers



Individually programmable* 53



Individually programmable 53

7 Instrument cluster 12



Windshield wipers 65



Rain sensor 65



Sports Wagon: rear window wiper 66

9



Starting/stopping engine and switching ignition on/off 58

10 Ignition lock 58

11 Horn: entire surface

12



Steering wheel heater* 52



Steering wheel adjustment 52

13



Cruise control* 66



Active cruise control* 67

14 Releasing hood 204

15 Opening luggage compartment lid/ tailgate 35, 33

16



Head-Up Display* 96



BMW Night Vision* 98

17



Parking lamps 101



Low beams 101



Automatic headlamp control* 101



Adaptive Head Light* 102

High-beam assistant* 103

18



Instrument lighting 104



Fog lamps* 104

Indicator and warning lamps

The concept



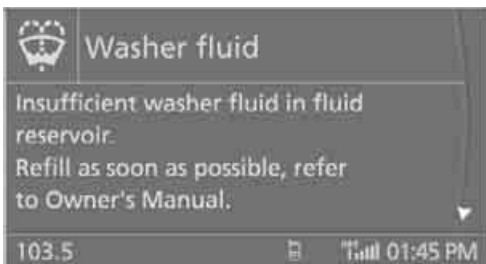
Indicator and warning lamps can light up both in the display area 1 and in the display 2 in various combinations and colors.

Some lights are tested for proper function by briefly lighting up during starting of the engine or when the ignition is switched on.

Explanatory text messages



Text message at the bottom edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.









Additional information, e.g. on the cause of a malfunction and on the corresponding need to take action can be displayed via the Check Control, refer to page 79.

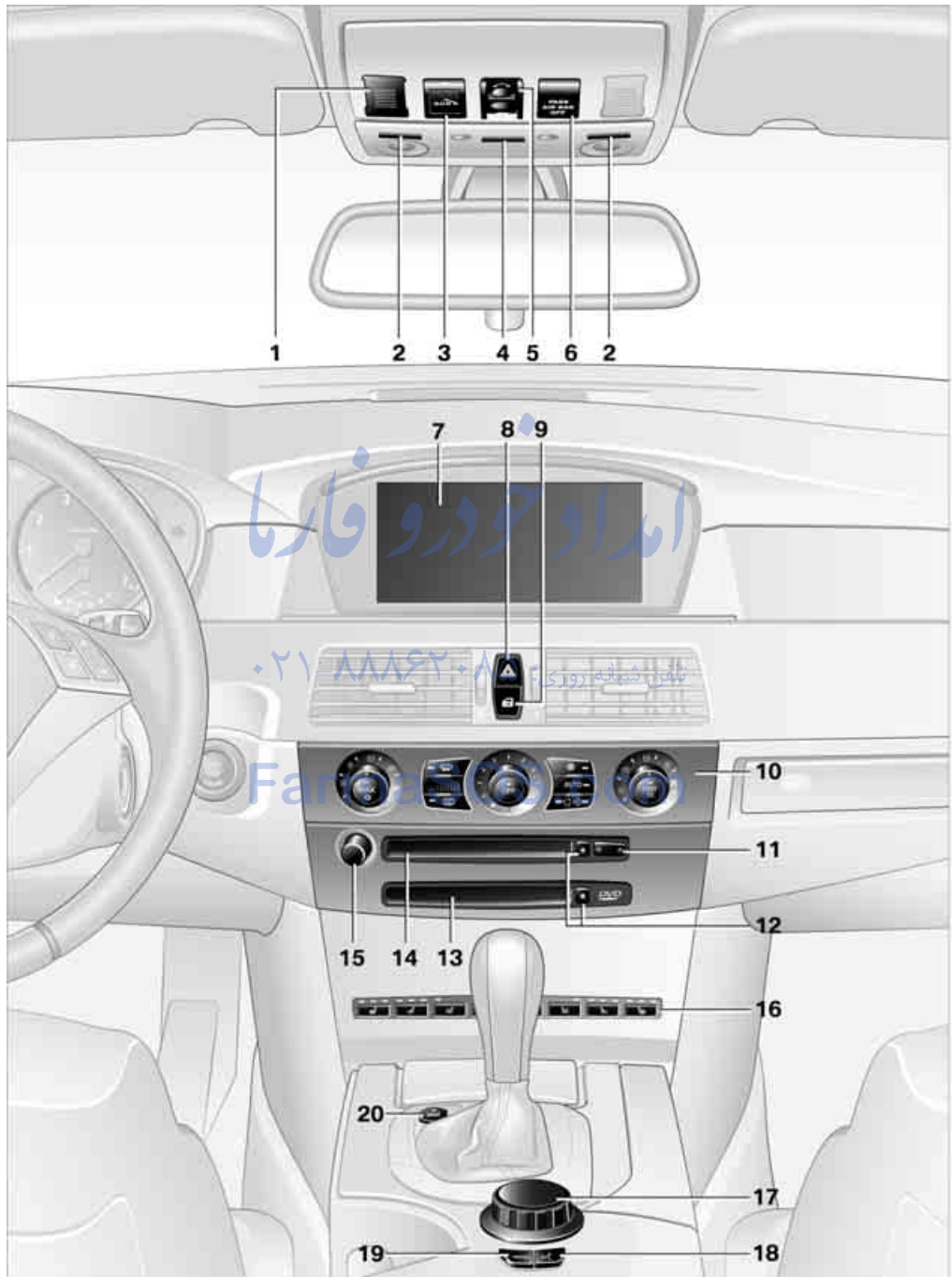
In the case of corresponding urgency, this information is displayed immediately when the related lamp lights up.

Indicator lamps without text messages












The following indicator lamps in the display area 1 indicate that the associated functions are activated:

-  Handbrake engaged 60
-  Handbrake engaged for Canadian models
-  Fog lamps* 104
-  DTC Dynamic Traction Control 87
-  High beams/headlamp flasher 102
-  Lamp flashes:
DSC or DTC controls the drive and braking forces for maintaining vehicle stability 87







Around the center console: controls and displays



- 1 Microphone for handsfree mode for telephone* and for voice command system* 22
- 2 Reading lamps 104
- 3 Initiating an emergency call 219
- 4 Interior lamps 104
- 5 Glass sunroof*, electric 41
Panorama glass sunroof* 43
- 6 Passenger airbag status lamp 95
- 7 Control Display 16
Displays for menu navigation
- 8 Hazard warning flashers
- 9 Central locking system 32
- 10 Automatic climate control 105

-  Temperature setting, left/right 106
-  Automatic air distribution and volume 106
-  Cooling function 107
-  AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 108
-  Recirculated-air mode 108
-  Maximum cooling 107
-  Residual heat mode 108
-  Switching off automatic climate control 108
-  Air volume 107
-  Defrosting windows and removing condensation 107
-  Rear window defroster 105

- 11 Changing
 - ▷ radio station 152
 - ▷ track 152

- 12 Ejecting
 - ▷ navigation DVD* 132
 - ▷ audio CD 152
- 13 Drive for navigation DVDs* 132
- 14 Drive for audio CDs 152
- 15 Switching Entertainment sound output on/off and adjusting volume 152
- 16  Heated seats* 50
-  Active seat ventilation* 51
-  Adjusting active backrest width* 47
-  Active seat* 51
-  PDC Park Distance Control* 85
-  DTC DTC Dynamic Traction Control 87

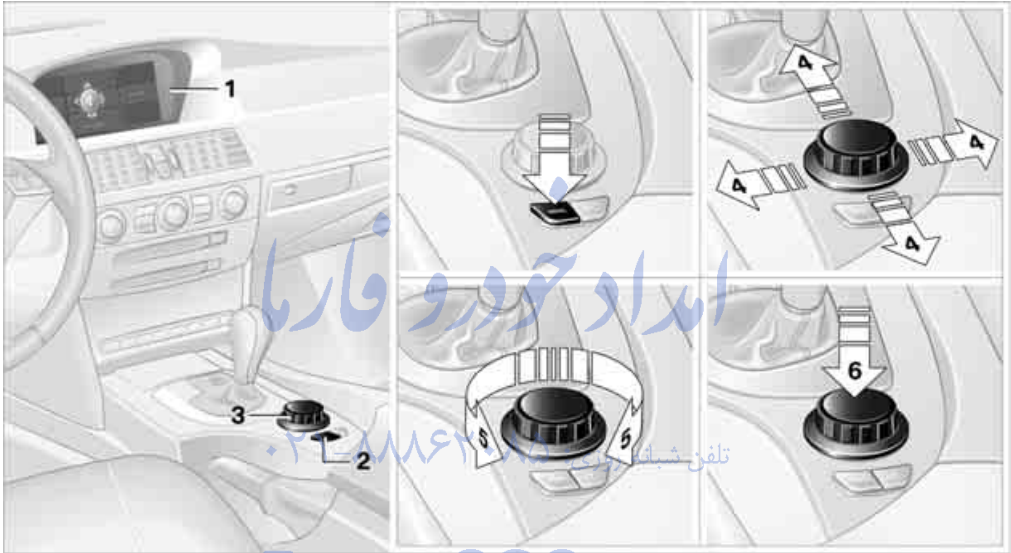
- 17 Controller 16
Turn, press or move horizontally in four directions
- 18 Activating voice command system* 22
- 19 Opening start menu on Control Display 17
- 20 Dynamic Driving Control* 62

اردو خود رو فارما
 021-8862088
 FarmaSOS.com

iDrive combines the functions of a large number of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a central position. The following section provides an introduction to basic menu

navigation. The control of the individual functions is described in connection with the relevant equipment.

Controls



- 1 Control Display
- 2 **MENU** button
Opening start menu
- 3 Controller
With the controller you can select menu items and make settings:
 - ▷ move in four directions, arrows 4
 - ▷ turn, arrow 5
 - ▷ press, arrow 6

! To avoid posing an unnecessary hazard due to inattention, both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users: never attempt to use the controls or make entries unless traffic and road conditions allow. ◀

Menu overview

Communication

- ▷ Telephone*
- ▷ BMW Assist* or TeleService*

Navigation or onboard information

- ▷ Navigation system*
- ▷ Onboard information, e.g. for displaying the average fuel consumption

Entertainment

- ▷ Radio
- ▷ CD player and CD changer*
- ▷ External audio device

Climate

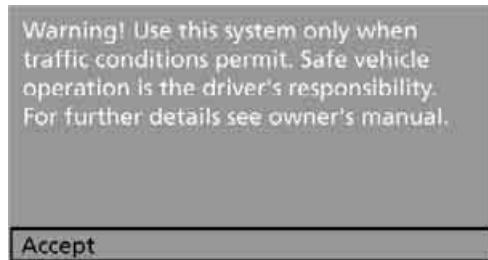
- ▷ Air distribution
- ▷ Seat air conditioning*
- ▷ Automatic program
- ▷ Parked car ventilation*

i menu

- ▷ Switching off Control Display
- ▷ Tone and display settings
- ▷ Settings for your vehicle, e.g. for the central locking system
- ▷ Display of service requirements and dates for statutory emission and vehicle inspections
- ▷ Settings for telephone

Operating principle

From radio readiness, refer to page 58, the following message is shown on the Control Display:



To clear the message:
Press the controller.
This displays the start menu.

On vehicles with a single drive, the message automatically disappears after approx. 10 seconds.

Start menu



You can call up all the functions of iDrive using five menu items.

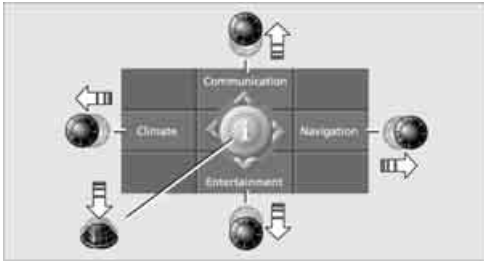
Opening start menu

Press the **MENU** button.

To open the start menu from the **i** menu:

Press the **MENU** button twice.

Opening menu items of start menu



With the start menu you can open the menu items Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate by moving the controller to the left, right, front or rear.

You can open the **i** menu by pressing the controller.

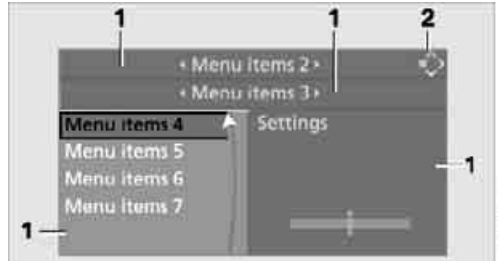
Comfort opening of menu items

Comfort opening offers you:

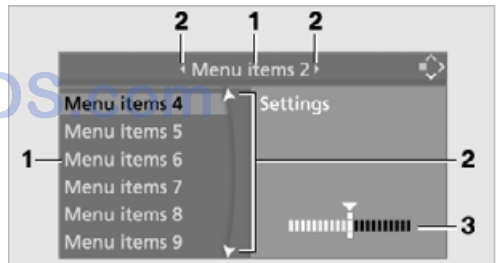
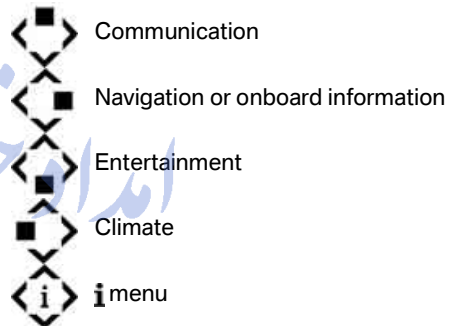
- ▶ Opening of a menu item of the start menu in the last display shown
- ▶ Direct switching between Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate without pressing the **MENU** button

For this purpose, move the controller in the corresponding direction and hold it for longer than approx. 2 seconds.

Displays in menu



- 1 Each menu is divided into fields. The respective active field is highlighted.
- 2 A symbol indicates the last selected menu item of the start menu:



- 1 Menu items are usually grouped in horizontal or vertical lists.
- 2 In these lists, arrows indicate the possibility of accessing other menu items that are not currently visible.
- 3 Settings are displayed graphically or numerically.

Operating principle at a glance

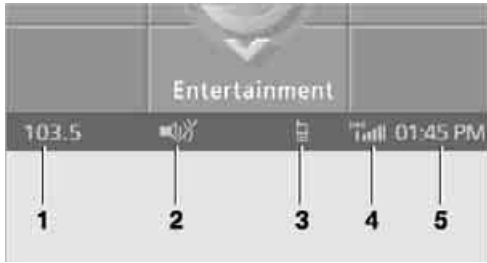
Basic operation via iDrive is described in this view.

You can view the individual steps under Settings on Control Display, Setting time, refer to page 82.



- 1 Selecting menu item:**
 - ▶ Turn the controller; the highlight moves
 - ▶ Menu items shown in white can be selected by highlighting
- 2 Activating menu item:**
 - ▶ Press the controller
 - ▶ New menu items are displayed or the function is carried out
- 3 Selecting menu item: refer to 1**
- 4 Changing between fields:**
 - ▶ Briefly move the controller left, right, forward or back
 - ▶ Release controller
 - ▶ Active field appears lighter
- 5 Adjusting settings:**
 - ▶ Turn controller
 - ▶ Graphic display, numerical value or text displays can be changed
 - ▶ Acknowledgment by changing field

Status information



- 1 Display for:
 - ▷ Entertainment: Radio, CD
 - ▷ Telephone* in "Communication": Name of linked mobile phone, network search or no network
 - ▷ "BMW Assist"*: Existing voice connection with a service from BMW Assist
- 2 Entertainment sound output off
- 3 Display for:
 - ▷ New entries present in "Missed calls"*
 - ▷ Roaming active
- 4 Telephoning* possible if the mobile phone is logged-on in the vehicle
 Mobile phone network with strong reception, display dependent on mobile phone
- 5 Time

Other displays:

The status information is temporarily hidden when there are Check Control instructions or inputs via the voice command system*.

Assistance window*

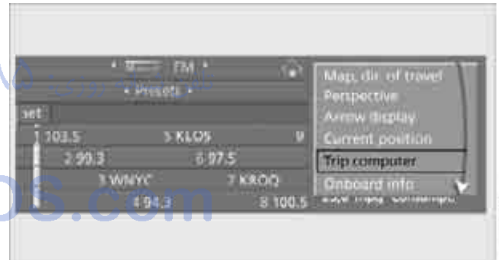


Additional information can be displayed in the assistance window:

- ▷ The computer or the trip computer*
- ▷ The arrow or map view with a navigation system*
- ▷ The current position

Selecting display

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.



2. Select a menu item.
3. Press the controller.

Switching assistance window off/on

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.
2. Select "Assist. window off" and press the controller.



To switch on, change to the assistance window and press the controller.

Switching Control Display off/on

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Display off" and press the controller.



To switch on, press the controller.

Voice command system*

The concept

The voice command system allows you to control operation of various vehicle systems without ever removing your hands from the steering wheel.

Individual menu items on the Control Display can be spoken as commands. This frees you of having to use the controller.

The voice command system transforms your oral commands into control signals for the selected systems and provides support in the form of instructions or questions.

The voice command system uses a special microphone located in the area of the interior rearview mirror, refer to page 14.

Precondition


Via iDrive, set the language that applies for the voice command system in order to enable identification of the spoken commands. To set the language of iDrive, refer to page 84.

Symbols in Owner's Manual

- ›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
- ››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the voice command system.

Voice commands

Activating voice command system

1. Press the  button.



- ››› This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal tell you that the voice command system can respond to commands.




2. Say the command.
The command is displayed on the Control Display.




- ››› This symbol is shown on the Control Display when you can input additional commands.

If no other commands are possible, then operate the equipment using iDrive.

Terminating or canceling voice command system

Press the  button on the steering wheel or in the center console or


 ›Cancel‹

Commands

Having possible commands read aloud


You can have the system read aloud the possible commands related to the selected menu item on the Control Display.

To have the system list the possible commands:

 ›Options‹


For example, if you have selected "CD", the system will read aloud the possible commands for operating the CD player and the CD changer*.

Opening help

 ›Help‹

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

 ›Radio on‹ or ›Turn radio on‹


Running functions directly with short commands

With short commands you can carry out certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected, refer to page 231.

Opening start menu

 ›Main menu‹


Example: selecting a track

1. Switch on Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2. Press the  button on the steering wheel or in the center console.
3. ›Entertainment‹
The system says:
››Entertainment‹‹




4. ›CD‹
The system says:
››CD drive switched on‹‹



5. Press the  button on the steering wheel or in the center console.
6. Select track, e.g.:
›Track 1‹
The system says:
››Track 1‹‹



Notes

 The mobile phone can also be operated with voice commands, refer to page 183. ◀

For voice commands, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Say the commands and numbers smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses. This also applies to spelling when entering the destination.
- ▷ Always issue commands in the language of the voice command system.
- ▷ When selecting a radio station, use the common pronunciation of the station name.
- ▷ For entries in the voice-activated phone book, only use names in the language of the voice command system and no abbreviations.
- ▷ Keep the doors, windows and glass sunroof* or panorama glass sunroof* closed to avoid interfering outside noise.
- ▷ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information for complete control of your vehicle. Its extensive array of features and accessories, both for driving and for your own safety, comfort and convenience, are described here.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Opening and closing

Keys/remote control



- 1 Remote control with integrated key
- 2 Spare key
- 3 Adapter for spare key, in glove compartment

Remote control with integrated key

Each remote control contains a battery which is automatically charged in the ignition lock while driving. Drive a longer distance with each remote control at least twice a year to keep the battery charged. For comfort access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 40.

Depending on which remote control is detected by the vehicle during unlocking, different settings are called up and carried out in the vehicle, refer to Personal Profile, page 29.

Information on the required maintenance is also stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in remote control, page 209.

Integrated key



Press the button 1 to unlock the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Glove compartment, refer to page 113
- ▷ Sports Wagon: floor panel flap in cargo area, refer to page 118
- ▷ Driver's door, refer to page 32
- ▷ Luggage compartment lid, refer to page 33.

New remote controls

To obtain additional or replace lost keys, new remote controls with an integrated key are available at your BMW center.

Spare key

Store the spare key in a safe place such as your wallet. This key is not intended for regular use.

The spare key and integrated key fit the same locks.

Adapter for spare key

The adapter is required so that the vehicle can be started with the spare key or radio readiness can be switched on.



Remove the adapter from the holder in the glove compartment and slide the spare key into the adapter before use.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set a number of functions of your BMW individually according to your preferences. Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use without you having to do anything. When the vehicle is unlocked, the corresponding remote control is detected and the settings stored for it are called up and carried out.

This means that you will always find your BMW set to your own personal settings even if another person with his/her own remote control and settings has used the vehicle since the last time you drove it. The individual settings are stored for a maximum of four remote controls.

Personal Profile settings

Details on the settings are provided on the specified pages.

- ▷ When unlocking with the remote control, either unlock only the driver's door or the entire vehicle, refer to page [30](#)
- ▷ Locking the vehicle after a short time or after starting off, refer to page [32](#)
- ▷ Assigning the programmable buttons* on the steering wheel, refer to page [53](#)

- ▷ Settings for the display on the Control Display:

- ▷ Brightness of the Control Display, refer to page [83](#)
- ▷ Measuring units for consumption, route/distances, temperature, and pressure, refer to page [84](#)
- ▷ Language on Control Display, refer to page [84](#)
- ▷ 12h/24h mode of the clock, refer to page [83](#)
- ▷ Date format, refer to page [83](#)
- ▷ Showing optical warning for PDC Park Distance Control*, refer to page [85](#)
- ▷ Selection and brightness of display in Head-Up Display*, refer to page [97](#)
- ▷ Display settings of BMW Night Vision*, refer to page [99](#)
- ▷ Air distribution, temperature in the upper body area and intensity of the automatic air conditioning system, refer to page [106](#)
- ▷ Setting voice instructions for destination guidance in the navigation system*, refer to page [147](#)

In addition, the following, most recently selected settings are recalled during unlocking:

- ▷ Positions of driver's seat, outside mirrors, and steering wheel*, refer to page [47](#)
- ▷ Audio sources, volume and tone settings, refer to page [153](#)
- ▷ Radio, displaying stored stations, refer to page [156](#)
- ▷ Telephone, setting volume, refer to pages [178](#), [184](#)

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system is ready for operation whenever the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- ▷ Doors

- ▷ Luggage compartment lid or tailgate and rear window
- ▷ Fuel filler door

Operating from outside

- ▷ via the remote control
- ▷ via the door lock
- ▷ with comfort access* via the door handles

At the same time, the anti-theft system is also operated. It prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or door handles. The interior lamps and the courtesy lamps* are also switched on and off with the remote control. The alarm system is armed/disarmed at the same time.

You can find more detailed information on the alarm system on page 37.

Operating from inside

Via the button for central locking, refer to page 32. The fuel filler door is not locked.

In an accident of sufficient severity, the central locking system automatically unlocks the vehicle. In addition, the hazard warning flashers and interior lamps come on.


Opening and closing: from outside

- ▷ Sports Wagon with xDrive: the vehicle is raised somewhat at the rear after locking. This is normal and is linked to minor noises. ◀

Using remote control

⚠ Because any persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle could lock the doors from the inside, you should always keep the remote control with you; this precaution ensures that you will remain able to unlock the vehicle from the outside at all times. ◀

Unlocking

Press the  button. This unlocks the vehicle.

You can set how the vehicle is unlocked. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.



iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Door locks" and press the controller.



5. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
6. Select "Unlock button" and press the controller. تلفن شبانه ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵


7. Select a menu item:

- ▷ "All doors" Press the  button once to unlock the entire vehicle.
- ▷ "Driver's door only" Press the  button once to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler door. Press the button twice to unlock the entire vehicle.



8. Press the controller.

Convenience opening

Press the  button longer. The windows and the glass sunroof* open.

Locking

Press the  LOCK button.

Switching on interior lamps


With vehicle locked:

Press the  LOCK button.

You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages etc.


Panic mode*

You can also trigger the alarm system in case of danger:


Press the  button for at least 3 seconds.

Switch off alarm: press any button.


Sedan: opening luggage compartment lid

Press the  button for approx. 1 second.


The luggage compartment lid opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

 During opening, the luggage compartment lid pivots back and up. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening. To prevent accidentally locking yourself out, never lay the remote control in the luggage compartment. A previously locked luggage compartment lid is also locked again after closing. ◀


Sports Wagon: unlocking tailgate

Press the  button for approx. 1 second.

The tailgate will open slightly, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

 During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening. To prevent accidentally locking yourself out, never lay the remote control in the luggage compartment. A previously locked tailgate is also locked again after closing.

When opening the tailgate, the roll-up cover is raised. Before closing the tailgate, press down the roll-up cover until it engages. ◀


 If pointed or sharp-edged objects could strike the rear window while driving, be sure to provide protection around all edges. Failure to do so could result in damage to the heating conductors of the rear window. ◀

Setting confirmation signals

You can vary or also deactivate the confirmation signals for locking or unlocking.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Door locks" and press the controller.
5. Select "Confirmation" and press the controller.



6. Select the desired signal.
7. Press the controller.
 The signal is activated.

Malfunctions

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. Should the remote control fail to operate owing to interference of this kind, unlock and lock the vehicle via the door lock using a key.

If it is no longer possible to lock the vehicle using the remote control, then the battery is discharged. Use this remote control during an extended drive; this will recharge the battery, refer to page 28.

For US owners only


The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS
LX8CAS2

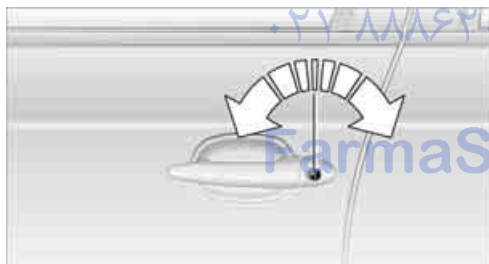
Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- ▷ This device must not cause harmful interference, and
- ▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

 Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment. ◀

Using door lock




When unlocking

1. Turning the key once unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler door.
2. Turning the key a second time unlocks the remaining doors and the luggage compartment lid/tailgate.

Convenience operation

You also have the option of operating the windows and the glass sunroof* from the driver's door lock.

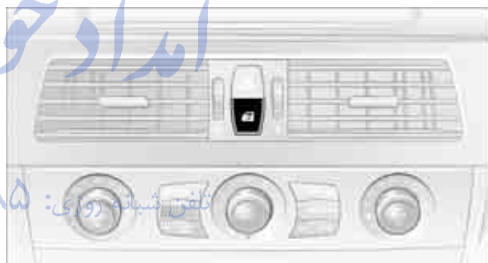
Turn and hold the key in the positions for unlocking or locking.

 Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Releasing the key stops the operation. ◀

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can turn a key all the way to the right or left in the door lock to lock or unlock the driver's door.

Opening and closing: from inside



This button serves to unlock or lock doors and the luggage compartment lid or tailgate and rear window with the front doors closed, but does not activate the anti-theft system. The fuel filler door remains unlocked.

You can also set the situations in which the vehicle is locked.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Door locks" and press the controller.

- Select "Central locking" and press the controller.



- Select a menu item:
 - "Relock door if not opened"

The central locking system automatically locks the vehicle after a short time when no door has been opened.
 - "Lock after driving"

The central locking system automatically locks the vehicle as soon as you start to drive.
- Press the controller.
 - The setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening doors

- Either unlock the doors together with the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or
- pull on the door handle of each door twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

Locking

- Use the central locking button to lock all of the doors simultaneously, or
- press down the lock button of a door. To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

! Because any persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle could lock the doors from the inside, you should always keep the remote control with you; this precaution ensures that you will remain able to unlock the vehicle from the outside at all times. ◀

Doors

Automatic soft closing*

To close the doors, merely press it closed gently. The closing process will then be carried out automatically.

! Make sure that the closing path of the doors is clear; as otherwise injuries may result. ◀

Luggage compartment lid/ tailgate

▶ During opening, the luggage compartment lid/tailgate pivots back and up. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening. ◀

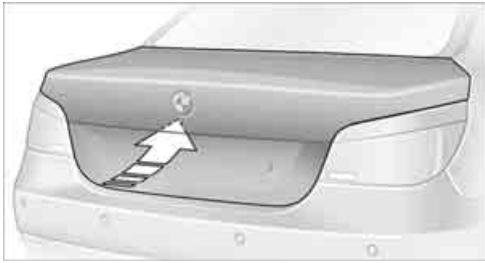
Sedan


Opening from inside

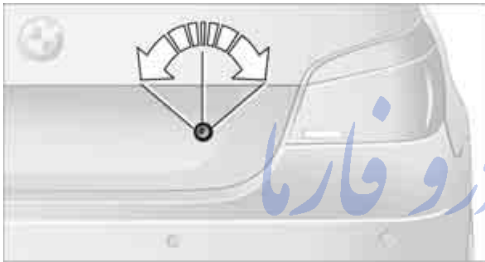


Press the button: the luggage compartment lid opens unless it has been locked.

Opening from outside



Press the button on the luggage compartment lid or the  button on the remote control for approx. 1 second: the luggage compartment lid opens.



All keys, refer to page 28, fit the luggage-compartment lid lock.


Locking separately

Turn a key in the lock of the luggage compartment lid to the right past a resistance point and remove it in the horizontal position.

This locks the luggage compartment lid and disconnects it from the central locking system. If you then hand over the remote control without the integrated key, refer to page 28, no access is possible via the luggage compartment lid. This is an advantage when using valet parking, for example.


Unlocking again and opening manually

Turn the key toward the left up to the stop: the luggage compartment lid opens.

 If you use the lock to unlock the luggage compartment lid while the alarm system is armed, the alarm will be triggered. You should therefore unlock the vehicle ahead of time. If the

alarm is inadvertently triggered: switch off the alarm, refer to page 38. ◀

Closing

 Make sure that the closing path of the luggage compartment lid is clear, otherwise injuries may result. ◀



The handle recesses on the interior trim of the luggage compartment lid make it easier to pull down.

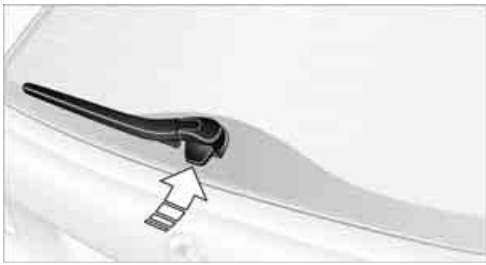
Emergency release



Pull lever in luggage compartment. The luggage compartment lid is unlocked.


Sports Wagon: opening and closing rear window


Small items can be loaded and unloaded quickly when the rear window is opened separately.



Press the button: the rear window opens somewhat. It can be swung upward.


Press the window closed to close.

 When opening the rear window, the roll-up cover is raised. Before closing the rear window, press down the roll-up cover until it engages. ◀

 If pointed or sharp-edged objects could strike the rear window while driving, be sure to provide protection around all edges. Failure to do so could result in damage to the heating conductors of the rear window. ◀

Automatic roll-up cover*

When opening the rear window, the roll-up cover is raised, and when the rear window is closed, it is lowered.

 Make sure that the closing area of the roll-up cover is clear of obstructions, as otherwise the payload or the roll-up cover may be damaged. ◀

Details on the roll-up cover are provided on page 117.

Sports Wagon: tailgate


Opening from inside




Press the button: the tailgate opens somewhat unless it has been locked.

Opening from outside



Press the button on the tailgate or the  button on the remote control for approx. 1 second: the tailgate opens somewhat. It can be swung upward.

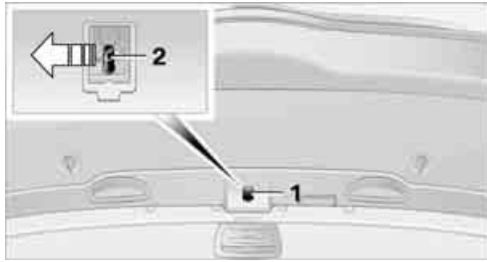


 When opening the tailgate, the roll-up cover is raised. Before closing the tailgate, press down the roll-up cover until it engages. ◀

Opening manually

In case of an electrical defect:

1. From the cargo area, press out the cover **1** on the tailgate with a screwdriver.



2. Press the locking bar **2** in the direction of the arrow.
3. Open the tailgate and press in the cover again.

The tailgate is locked again as soon as it is closed.

Closing

! Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear, otherwise injuries may result. ◀



The handle recesses on the interior trim of the tailgate make it easier to pull down.

To close the tailgate, merely press it down gently. The closing process will then be carried out automatically.

Sports Wagon: automatic tailgate operation*

Adjusting opening height

You can adjust how far the tailgate is to open. iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Door locks" and press the controller.
5. Select "Tailgate" and press the controller.




6. Turn the controller. The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.

Opening tailgate



The tailgate opens automatically when you:

- ▶ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate when the vehicle is unlocked.




- ▷ Press the  button in the driver's footwell.




- ▷ Press the  button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.
-  During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening. ◀

To interrupt opening:

- ▷ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate.
- ▷ Press and hold the  button on the remote control.
- ▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.


Automatic roll-up cover

When the tailgate or rear window is opened, the roll-up cover is raised, and when the tailgate and rear window is closed, it is lowered.

 Make sure that the closing area of the roll-up cover is clear of obstructions, as otherwise the payload or the roll-up cover may be damaged. ◀

Details on the roll-up cover are provided on page 117.

Closing tailgate


 Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear, otherwise injuries may result. ◀



The tailgate closes automatically when the button on the inside of the tailgate is pressed.

To interrupt closing:

- ▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.
- ▷ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

 Closing is not canceled when you put the vehicle into motion. ◀

Alarm system

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds:


- ▷ When a door, the hood or the luggage compartment lid/tailgate or rear window is opened
- ▷ To movements in the vehicle: Interior motion sensor, refer to page 38
- ▷ To changes in the vehicle's tilt if someone attempts to steal the wheels or tow the vehicle
- ▷ To interruptions in battery voltage

Unauthorized operations are briefly signaled by the alarm system:

- ▷ with an acoustic alarm
- ▷ by switching on the hazard warning flashers
- ▷ by flashing the high beams

Arming and disarming alarm system

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

The luggage compartment lid/tailgate can also be opened with the system armed with the  button on the remote control, refer to page 33. When the luggage compartment lid/tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again.

Switching off alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle using the remote control, refer to page 30.
- ▷ Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Indicator lamp displays



- ▷ The indicator lamp under the inside rearview mirror flashes continuously: the system is armed.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after locking: doors, hood, luggage compartment lid/tailgate or rear window is/are not properly closed. Even if you do not close the alerted area, the system begins to monitor the remaining areas, and the indicator lamp flashes continuously after approx. 10 seconds. However, the interior motion sensor is not activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking: your vehicle has not been disturbed while you were away.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted into the ignition lock, however for a maximum of approx. 5 minutes: your vehicle has been disturbed while you were away.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored. The alarm system reacts, e.g. in case of an attempted wheel theft or towing.

Interior motion sensor


In order for the interior motion sensor to function properly, the windows and glass sunroof* must be completely closed.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may be switched off at the same time. This prevents unintentional alarms, e.g. in the following situations:

- ▷ In stacking garages
- ▷ When transporting on car-carrying trains
- ▷ When animals are to remain in the vehicle

Switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the  LOCK button on the remote control again as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up briefly and then flashes continuously. The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor are switched off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked and subsequently locked again.

Comfort access*

Comfort access enables you to access your vehicle without having to hold the remote control in your hand. It is sufficient to carry the remote control with you, e.g. in your jacket pocket. The vehicle automatically detects the related remote control in the immediate vicinity or in the interior.

Comfort access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking vehicle
- ▷ Comfort locking
- ▷ Opening luggage compartment lid/tailgate separately

- ▶ Sports Wagon: opening rear window separately
- ▶ Starting engine

Functional requirement

- ▶ The vehicle or the luggage compartment lid/tailgate can only be locked if the vehicle detects that the remote control you are carrying is outside the vehicle.
- ▶ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- ▶ The engine can only be started if the vehicle detects that the remote control is located in the vehicle.

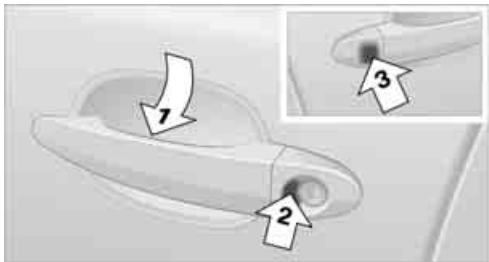
Comparison with ordinary remote control

You can control the functions mentioned previously with the comfort access or by pressing the buttons on the remote control. Therefore, please familiarize yourself with the information on opening and closing beginning on page 28 beforehand.

The special features when using comfort access are described in the following.

- ▶ Should a short delay occur when opening or closing the windows or the glass sunroof, the system is checking whether a remote control is located in the vehicle. Please repeat opening or closing if necessary. ◀

Releasing



Completely grasp a door handle, arrow 1. This corresponds to pressing the button.

If a remote control is detected in the interior after unlocking, the electric steering-wheel lock unlocks, refer to page 58.

Locking

- ▶ For the driver's door, touch the area highlighted in the picture, arrow 2, with your finger for approx. 1 second.
- ▶ For the remaining doors, touch the area highlighted in the picture, arrow 3, with your finger for approx. 1 second.

This corresponds to pressing the LOCK button.

- ▶ Please make sure that the ignition and all current consumers are switched off before locking to save the battery. ◀

Comfort locking

Hold a finger or the back of the hand on the surface, arrow 2 or 3.

The windows and the glass sunroof* are closed.

- ▶ Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Removing the hand from the door handle stops the closing process immediately. ◀

Opening luggage compartment lid/tailgate separately

Press the button on the luggage compartment lid/tailgate. This corresponds to pressing the button.


- ▶ If a remote control accidentally left in the luggage compartment/cargo area is detected in the locked vehicle after closing the luggage compartment lid/tailgate or the rear window, the lid or rear window opens again. The hazard warning flashers flash and a signal* sounds. ◀

Sports Wagon: opening rear window separately

Press the button on the rear window, refer to page 34.

Switching on radio readiness

By briefly pressing the Start/Stop button, you switch on the radio readiness, refer to page 58.

 When doing so, do not depress the brake or clutch pedal, as otherwise the engine will start immediately. ◀

Starting engine

You can start the engine or switch on the switch on ignition if a remote control is located in the interior of the vehicle. It need not be inserted in the ignition lock, refer to page 58.

If you take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle with the engine running, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display. As long as no remote control is detected in the vehicle, it is only possible to restart the engine within approx. 10 seconds after it is switched off.

Switching off engine with automatic transmission

The engine can only be switched off in the selector lever position P, refer to page 60. To switch off the engine in the selector lever position N, the remote control must be inserted in the ignition lock.

Before driving into a car wash with automatic transmission

1. Insert remote control into ignition lock.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Place selector lever in position N.
4. Switch off the engine.

The vehicle can roll.

Malfunction

The comfort access function may malfunction due to local radio waves. Then open or close the vehicle with the buttons on the remote control or with a key. To start the engine following this, insert the remote control in the ignition lock.

Replacing battery

The remote control for comfort access contains a battery which must be replaced if necessary.

1. Remove integrated key from remote control, refer to page 28.
2. Remove cover.



3. Lay in new battery with positive side facing upward.
4. Press cover closed.



Return used battery to a recycling collection point or to your BMW center. ◀

Windows



To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the windows and keep them in your field of vision until they are shut.

Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the windows and injure themselves. ◀

Opening, closing



- ▷ Press switch to resistance point:
The window continues to open as long as you keep the switch pressed.
- ▷ Press switch beyond resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

Separate switches for the rear windows are located in the rear.

For information on using the convenience operation at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 31 or 32.


For information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 39.

After switching off ignition

You can still operate the windows with the remote control removed or the ignition switched off for approx. 1 minute, as long as neither of the front doors has been opened.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force rises beyond a predefined threshold during closing, the system will immediately stop moving the window prior to lowering it slightly.

 Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the window's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.

Pulling the switch beyond the resistance point and holding it limits the response of the pinch protection system. In this case, if the closing force exceeds a defined threshold, the window will only open a little.


If the switch is pulled past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds, the pinch protection system will be deactivated.

Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows, as otherwise the pinch protection system will be impaired. ◀

Safety switch




With the safety switch, you can prevent the rear windows from being opened or closed via the switches in the rear passenger area, by children, for example. The LED lights up when this safety feature is activated.

 Always press the safety switch when children ride in the rear, otherwise unchecked closing of the windows could lead to injuries. ◀

Glass sunroof*, electric

The glass sunroof is ready for operation with the ignition switched on, refer to page 58.

 To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the glass sunroof and keep it in your field of vision until it is closed. Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the roof and injure themselves. ◀




Raising

Press switch.

- ▷ The closed glass sunroof is raised and the sliding visor opens slightly.

- ▶ The opened glass sunroof automatically moves into the raised position. The sliding visor remains completely open.

 Do not use force to close the headliner insert with the glass sunroof in its raised position, otherwise the mechanism will be damaged. ◀

Opening, closing

- ▶ Press switch back to the resistance point. The glass sunroof and the sliding visor open together for as long as you hold the switch in this position.
- ▶ Press switch back past the resistance point. The glass sunroof and the sliding visor open automatically. Briefly press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

In a similar manner, the glass sunroof closes when you slide the switch forward. The sliding visor remains open and can be closed by hand.

For information on using the convenience operation at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 31 or 32.

For information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 39.

Automatic opening and closing

Press the switch past the resistance point.


The following movements are also automatic:

- ▶ When the sunroof is open, press the switch in the lifting direction: the sunroof is raised all the way.
- ▶ When the sunroof is raised, press the switch in the opening direction: the sunroof is opened all the way.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Pinch protection system

If the glass sunroof encounters resistance when closing from roughly the center of the roof opening or when closing from the raised position, the closing action is interrupted and the glass sunroof reopens a short way.

 Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the sunroof's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as very thin objects, and the sunroof would continue closing.

Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point and holding it there deactivates the pinch protection system. ◀

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

After a power loss, the sunroof may only respond to the lift command. The system must be initialized. BMW recommends having this work done by your BMW center.

Moving manually

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can move the glass sunroof manually:

1. Fold the cover panel down, if necessary using a screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 211.




2. Insert the Allen wrench supplied with the onboard tool kit, refer to page 211, into the opening provided. Move the glass sunroof in the desired direction. The arrow below indicates the rotation direction for closing.



Sports Wagon: Panorama glass sunroof

The panorama glass sunroof is ready for operation with the ignition switched on, refer to page 58.

 To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the panorama glass sunroof and keep it in your field of vision until it is closed. Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the roof and injure themselves. ◀

Raising, opening, closing



Press the switch or slide it in the desired direction up to the resistance point.

The sliding visor is opened:

- ▶ together with the sunroof
- ▶ slightly when the sunroof is tilted

With the sunroof closed or tilted, the sliding visor can be opened and closed independently.

For information on using the convenience operation at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 31 or 32.

For information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 39.

Ventilation setting

Press the switch:

The sunroof is raised and the sliding visor is opened slightly.

Automatic opening and closing

Press the switch past the resistance point. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening and closing sunroof and sliding visor together

Press the switch beyond the resistance point twice consecutively.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.


Comfort position

Each time the panorama glass sunroof is completely opened and then closed, it stops in the comfort position. If desired, continue the motion following this with the switch.

In the comfort position the wind noises in the interior are reduced.

Pinch protection system

If the panorama glass sunroof or sliding visor encounter resistance when closing from roughly one third of the sunroof opening or when closing from the raised position, the closing action is interrupted and the panorama glass sunroof and sliding visor reopen a little.

 Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the sunroof's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as very thin objects, and the sunroof would continue closing.

Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point and holding it there deactivates the pinch protection system. ◀

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

After a power loss, the sunroof may only respond to the lift command. The system must be initialized. BMW recommends having this work done by your BMW center.

Moving manually

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can move the roof manually:

1. Fold back the cover, using the screwdriver from the toolkit at the points indicated if necessary, refer to page 211.



2. Remove the Allen key from the mounting next to the toolkit and insert it in the opening provided. Move the sunroof in the desired direction. The arrow below indicates the rotation direction for closing.



FarmaSOS.com


Adjustments

Sitting safely

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In the interaction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the seat position plays an important role in an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to observe the instructions contained in the following section.

For additional information on transporting children safely, refer to page 54.

Airbags

 Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always hold the steering wheel by its rim with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms in the event of airbag deployment.

No one and nothing is to come between the airbags and the seat occupant.

Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area. Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly and does not rest feet or legs on the instrument panel, otherwise leg injuries can occur if the front airbag is triggered.


Make sure that occupants do not rest their head on the side or head airbag, otherwise injuries can occur if the airbags are triggered. ◀

Even if you adhere to all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 94.

Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.


 Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident. ◀

Head restraints, refer to page 48.

Safety belts

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Your vehicle is provided with five seats, which are all equipped with a safety belt.

 Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. The safety belt may not lie across the neck, rub on sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be pinched. Wear the safety belt without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Otherwise the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen. Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly and pull the belt in the upper body area periodically to readjust the tension, in order to avoid a reduction in the restraint of the safety belt.

Sports Wagon: if the middle safety belt in the rear is used, the larger seatback half must be locked, refer to page 117, otherwise the middle safety belt has no restraining action. ◀

Safety belts, refer to page 49.

Seats

Note before adjusting

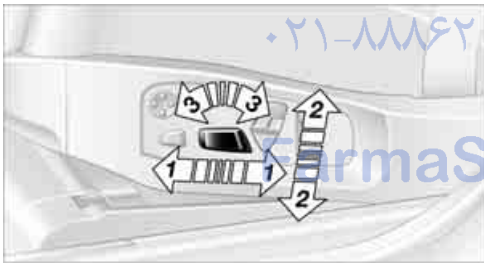
! Never attempt to adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement, and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.

Also on the passenger side, do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while the vehicle is being driven, otherwise there is a danger in the event of an accident of sliding under the safety belt, eliminating the protection normally provided by the belt. ◀

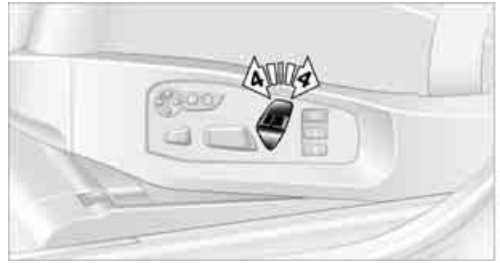
Please observe the information on damage to safety belts provided on page 50 and the information on the active front head restraints* on page 49.

Seat adjustment

! To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 45. ◀



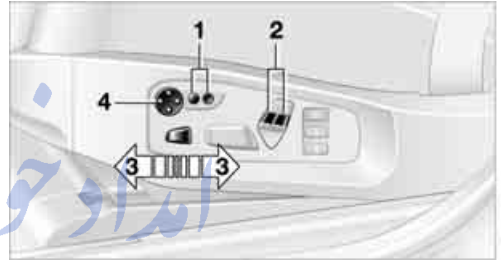
- 1 Longitudinal direction
- 2 Height
- 3 Angle



4 Backrest

Adjusting comfort seat*

In this seat, you can also adjust:



- 1 Backrest width
- 2 Shoulder support
- 3 Thigh support
- 4 Lumbar support*, see below

Shoulder support: the adjustable upper backrest also supports the back in the shoulder region. This provides a relaxed driving position and helps relieve stress on the shoulder muscles.

Adjusting lumbar support*



You can also adjust the contour of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

- ▶ Increase or decrease curvature: push switch forward or back.
- ▶ Shift curvature up or down: push switch up or down.

Adjusting active backrest width*



First set a comfortable backrest width, see above. Based on the backrest width set, the lateral support is automatically adapted to the current driving situation.

The adaptation of the backrest width and the speed of the adjustment vary depending on the program. You can select from among three programs from comfort to sport.

Press program button once:

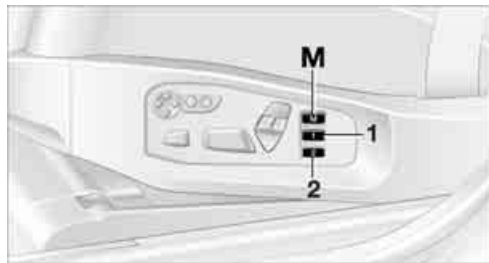
- ▶ "Comfort" program: one LED
- ▶ "Normal" program: two LEDs
- ▶ "Sport" program: three LEDs

To switch off: press button longer.

Easy entry/exit*

To facilitate entry and exit, the backrest width temporarily opens all the way.

Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory*




You can store and request two different positions for the driver's seat and passenger seat*, external rearview mirrors, and steering wheel.

The adjustment of the lumbar support is not stored in the memory.

Storing

1. Switch on radio readiness or ignition, refer to page 58.
2. Set the desired seat, exterior mirror and steering wheel positions.
3. Press the **M** button:
The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2**:
The LED goes out.

Requesting

 Do not request a position from the memory while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident from unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel. ◀

Convenience mode

1. Open the driver's door after unlocking or switch on radio readiness.
2. Briefly press the desired memory button **1** or **2**.

The system immediately cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment buttons or one of the memory buttons.

Safety feature

1. Close the driver's door and switch the ignition on or off.
2. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2** and maintain pressure until the adjustment process has been completed.

If the **M** button was pressed inadvertently: press the button again; the LED goes out.

Activating with remote control

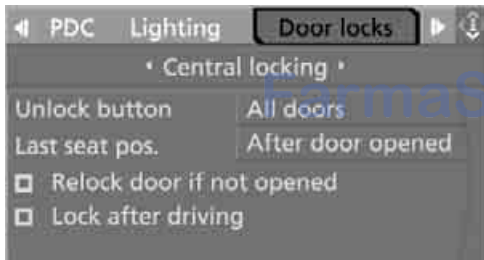
The last positions of the driver's seat, the external rearview mirrors, and steering wheel are stored for the remote key currently in use.

You can choose when the position is requested:

- ▷ Request when unlocking vehicle
- ▷ Request when opening driver's door

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Door locks" and press the controller.



5. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
6. Select "Last seat pos." and press the controller.

7. Select "After unlocking" or "After door opened".



8. Press the controller.

To cancel the request:

Select "Deactivated" and press the controller.

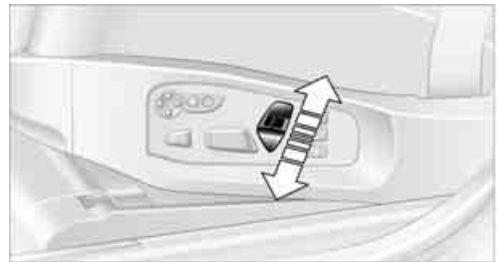
! When using this feature, always make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty and unobstructed. Failure to do so could cause injury to persons or damage to objects behind the seat as a result of a rearward movement of the seat. ◀

Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

! Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident. ◀

Front seats: height adjustment



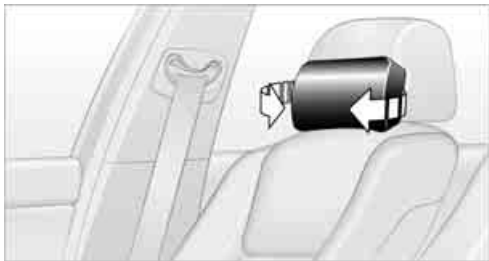
You can adjust the height of the head restraints electrically.

Front seats: angle adjustment

Swivel the head restraint.

With the comfort seat, use the shoulder support to set the distance to the back of the head.

Adjusting side extensions in comfort seat



You can fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

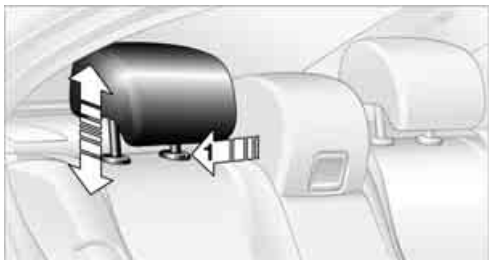
Front head restraints, active*

The comfort seats are equipped with an active head restraint.

In the event of a rear-end collision of sufficient severity, the active head restraint reduces the distance to the head.

! Do not use seat or head restraint covers and do not hand objects, e.g. clothes hangers, on the head restraints or attach any accessories to the seat or head restraint. Otherwise the protective function of the active head restraints will be impaired and personal safety endangered. ◀

Rear seats: height adjustment

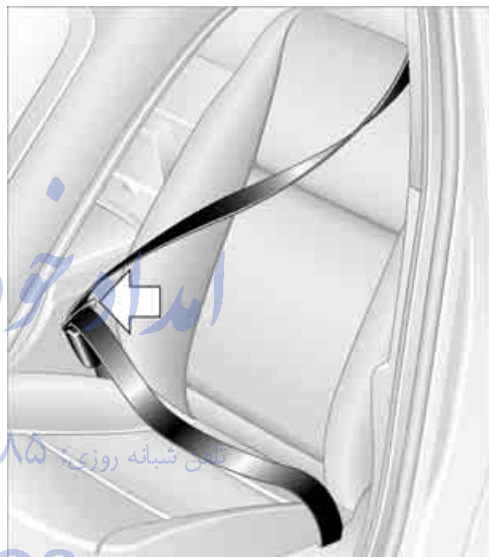


- ▷ To raise: pull up.
- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint downward.

Safety belts

! To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 45. ◀

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.



Fastening

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Safety belt memory for driver's seat and passenger seat*

! The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. A message also appears on the Control Display. Please check whether the safety belt is correctly positioned.

The safety belt memory is operative at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the passenger seat.


Releasing

1. Grasp the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the buckle.
3. Guide the belt into its reel.

The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted, refer to page 46.

The two rear safety belt buckles integrated into the rear seat are for passengers sitting on the left and right. The belt buckle embossed with the word CENTER is intended exclusively for use by passengers riding in the center position.

Damage to safety belts

 In the event of loads caused by accidents or other damage: replace the belt system including the safety belt tensioner and any child restraint systems, and have the belt anchor points checked. Only have this work carried out at a BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise correct operation of this safety equipment is not guaranteed. ◀

Heated seats*

Front



The temperature setting progresses one step through its control sequence each time you press the button. The maximum temperature is supplied when three LEDs are lit.

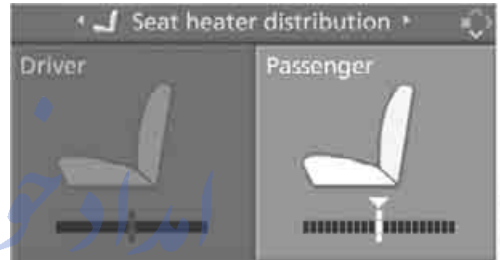
To switch off: press the button longer.

Temperature distribution

The heat output can be distributed variously in the seat cushion and the backrest.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Seat heater distribution" and press the controller.
4. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Driver" or "Passenger".



5. Turn the controller. The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.

Rear تلفن شبانه روز ۰۸۸۶۲۰۸۸-۰۲۱




Operation as for front seat heating; two temperature settings.

Active seat ventilation*



The system progresses one step through the control sequence each time you press the button.

To switch off: press the button longer.

 The highest position with three LEDs is used for rapid cooling, e.g. when the vehicle has gotten heated up. After a short time, the system is automatically switched down one position in order to prevent excessive cooling. ◀

Active seat*




The seat cushion is actively varied by alternately raising and lowering the right and left half of the seat cushion. This reduces muscular tension and fatigue to help prevent lower back pain.

Press the button to switch on; the LED lights up.

If you switch off the active seat, it can take up to 1 minute before the two halves of the seat cushion have returned to their initial position.

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

 The mirror on the passenger's side is more curved than the driver's mirror. Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance of following traffic based on what you see in the mirrors, otherwise there is an increased accident risk. ◀




- 1 Adjustments
- 2 Switching to the other mirror or to the automatic parking function

Storing the mirror positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 47.

Manual adjustment

You can also adjust the mirrors manually by pressing against the outer edges of their mirror glass.

Folding mirrors in and out

 To prevent the exterior mirrors on this vehicle from being damaged, always fold them in by hand before entering an automatic car wash. ◀

Automatic heating

Below a certain outdoor temperature, both exterior mirrors are automatically heated when the motor is running or the ignition is switched on.

Tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror – automatic parking function*

Activating

1. Slide switch into the driver's side mirror position, arrow 1.

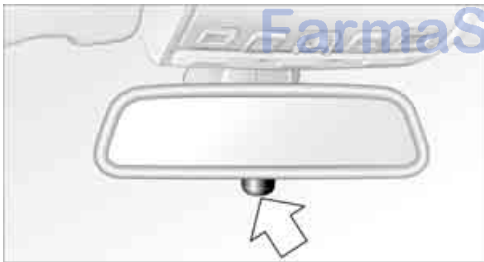


2. Engage reverse gear or selector lever position R.
The mirror glass tilts downward somewhat on the passenger's side. This allows the driver to see the area immediately adjacent to the vehicle – such as a curb – when parking, etc.

Deactivating

Slide switch into the passenger side mirror position, arrow 2.

Interior rearview mirror



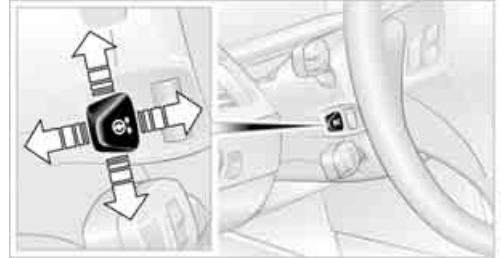
To reduce the dazzle effect of following vehicles at night, turn the knob.

Automatically dimming* mirrors, refer to page 125.

Steering wheel

Adjustments

⚠ Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident as the result of unexpected movement. ◀



The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

Storing steering wheel positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 47.

Electric steering wheel lock

The steering wheel locks or unlocks automatically when the remote control is removed or inserted, refer to page 58.

Easy entry/exit*

To facilitate entry and exit, the steering wheel temporarily moves into the uppermost position.

Steering wheel heater*



Press the button with the ignition switched on. When the steering wheel heater is operating, the LED in the button lights up.

Programmable buttons* on steering wheel

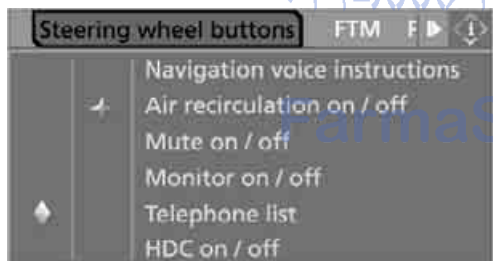


You can program the buttons individually.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Steering wheel buttons" is selected and press the controller.



A list of different functions appears:

- ▷ "Navigation voice instructions"
Voice instructions for the navigation system*
- ▷ "Air recirculation on / off"
Permanently shutting off outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated air control on page 108

- ▷ "Mute on / off"
Mutes the audio sources
- ▷ "Monitor on / off"
Switches the Control Display on/off
- ▷ "Telephone list"*
Display/hide phone book or last list of stored phone numbers
- ▷ "HDC on / off"
Switches HDC Hill Descent Control* on/off
- ▷ "Next entertainment source"
Changes audio source
- ▷ "Night Vision on / off"
Switches BMW Night Vision* on/off

5. Select the desired function and press the controller.
6. Select the button if necessary and press the controller.



You can operate the selected function using the corresponding button.

Operating function

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

If you have programmed "Navigation voice instructions" for one of the buttons:

- ▷ To switch voice instructions on/off:
Hold the button down.
- ▷ To repeat the last voice instruction:
Press the button.

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

⚠ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, otherwise they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g. by opening the doors. ◀

Children always in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is on the back seat.

⚠ Children younger than 13 years of age or with a height under 5 ft/150 cm may only be transported in the rear in child restraint systems which correspond to the age, weight and height of the child. Otherwise there is an increased danger of injury in an accident. ◀

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, size and weight.

With the exception of the driver's seat, all seats in your BMW comply with the recommendations of the standard SAE J1819 for the safe securing of child restraint systems in motor vehicles.

Exception for front passenger seat

⚠ Should it be necessary to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbag on the passenger side must be deactivated. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury for the child if the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint system. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you. ◀

For more information on automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags, refer to page 95.

Installing child restraint systems

⚠ Observe the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for selection, installation and use of the child restraint systems. Otherwise the degree of protection may be reduced. ◀

Backrest width* on front passenger seat

⚠ Before mounting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the backrest width adjustment must be open completely. After mounting the child's seat, no memory position may be called up and the active backrest width adjustment must be deactivated, otherwise the stability of the child's seat on the front passenger seat is limited. ◀

1. After unlocking the vehicle, place on the front passenger seat and close the door to call up the memory position.
2. Completely open the backrest width adjustment, refer to page 46.
3. Deactivate active backrest width adjustment, refer to page 47.
4. Install child's seat.

Child seat security



All rear safety belts and the safety belt for the front passenger can be locked against pulling out to secure child restraint systems.

Locking safety belt

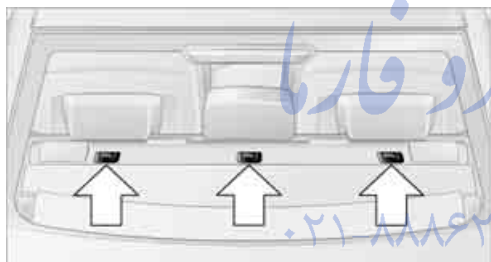
1. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in and pull taut against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking safety belt

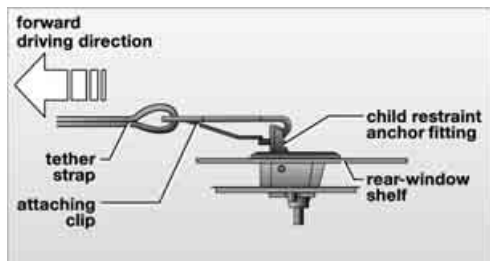
1. Open the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in completely.

Child restraint system with tether strap

Sedan



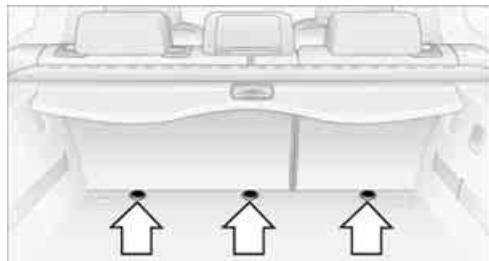
There are three additional mounting points for child restraint systems with a tether strap, refer to arrows. Fold the corresponding mounting point upward before using.



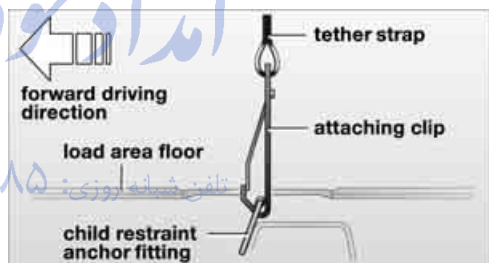
Sports Wagon



Only use the teather-strap mounting points to secure child restraint systems, as otherwise the mounting points could be damaged. ◀



There are three additional mounting points for child restraint systems with a tether strap, refer to arrows, under covers in the cargo area floor. Before using, remove the corresponding cover with a screwdriver.



Placement of tether strap

Outer seats:

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Guide the tether strap through the bracket of the head restraint.
3. Slide the head restraint into the bottom position.
4. Hook in the tether strap on the mounting point.

Center seat:

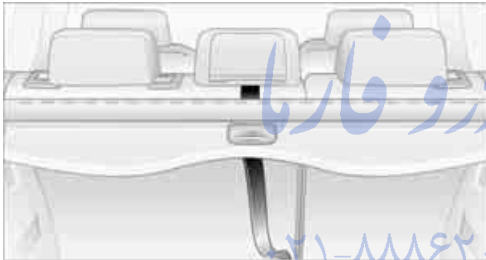
1. Fold the center armrest somewhat toward the front.

2. Guide the tether strap through the opening.




3. Fold back the center armrest.
4. Hook in the tether strap on the mounting point.

On the Sports Wagon, also guide the tether strap between the backrest and the roll-up cover on all rear seats.

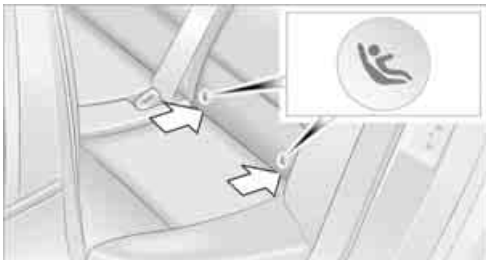


LATCH child-restraint fixing system

LATCH: Lower Anchor and Tethers for CHILDren.

 To attach a LATCH child's seat, follow the operating and safety instructions of the child's seat manufacturer. ◀

Sedan: rear seats

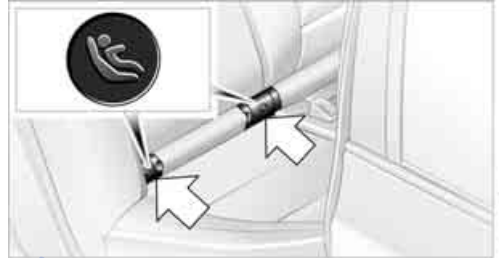


The mountings for the LATCH child's seat fixing system are located at the points marked

with the arrows. They are not visible from the outside.

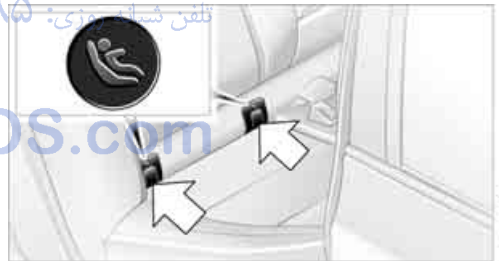
Before attaching the LATCH child's seat, pull the belt away from the region of the child-restraint fixing system.

Sedan: rear seats with through-loading system*



The anchorage points for the LATCH child-restraint fixing system are located behind the indicated protective caps. Before attaching the child's seat, remove the protective caps and pull the belt out of the area of the child-restraint fixing system.


Sports Wagon: rear seats



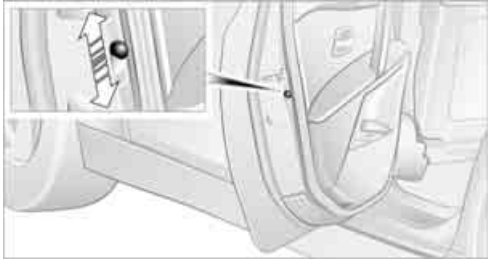
The mountings for mounting the LATCH child-restraint fixing system are located behind the indicated protective caps and are covered again after the child's seat is removed.

Before attaching the LATCH child's seat, pull the belt away from the region of the child-restraint fixing system.

On trips

 If the vehicle is equipped with rear side airbags, make sure that children do not lean out of the child's seat towards the door panels. Otherwise injuries can be caused if the side airbags are triggered. ◀

Child-safety locks for rear doors



Slide down the safety lever on the rear doors: the door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for power windows

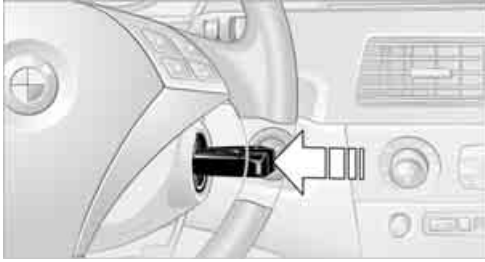
Always press the safety switch for the power windows, refer to page 41, when children are riding in the rear of the vehicle.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵ ۸۸۶۲۰۸۱-۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

Driving

Ignition lock



Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.

- ▷ Radio readiness switches on. Some current consumers are ready for operation.
- ▷ The electric steering-wheel lock audibly unlocks.

⚠ Before moving the vehicle, insert the remote control into the ignition lock; otherwise, the electric steering-wheel lock will not be unlocked and the vehicle cannot be steered. ◀

Removing remote control from ignition lock

Briefly press in the remote control; it is pushed out somewhat.

- ▷ The ignition is switched off if it was still switched on.
- ▷ The electric steering-wheel lock audibly locks.

Automatic transmission

The remote control can only be removed when the selector lever position P is selected: inter-lock.

Start/Stop button



Briefly pressing the Start/Stop button several times switches the radio readiness or the ignition on and off.

- ▷ Briefly pressing the Start/Stop button with the brake or clutch pedal depressed starts the engine. ◀

Radio readiness

Some current consumers are ready for operation. The time and outside temperature are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio readiness is automatically switched off:

- ▷ when the remote control is removed from the ignition lock
- ▷ with comfort access* by touching the sensitive surface on the door handle, refer to Locking on page 39

Ignition on

All current consumers are ready for operation. The odometer and the trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster, refer to page 74.

- ▷ Please switch off the ignition and the current consumers which are not required when the engine is not running to save the battery. ◀

Radio readiness and ignition off

All indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

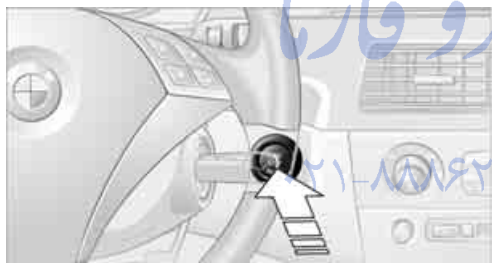
Starting engine

⚠ Do not run the engine in closed rooms, otherwise the inhaling of toxic exhaust gases can cause unconsciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic gas. Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running, as such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard.

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, set the selector lever to the idling or the P position and set the handbrake, otherwise the vehicle can begin to roll. ◀

When starting the engine, do not press the accelerator pedal.

Do not allow the engine to warm up by leaving it running while the vehicle remains stationary. Instead, begin to drive immediately at a moderate engine speed.



▶ Do not press either the brake or the clutch pedal as long as you do not want to start the engine. The engine starts immediately when you briefly press the Start/Stop button and press the brake pedal with an automatic transmission* or the clutch pedal with a manual transmission. ◀

Manual transmission

1. Apply the handbrake.
2. Depress the clutch pedal and select the idling position.
3. Briefly press Start/Stop button.

The system responds by automatically engaging the starter for a certain period and automatically disengaging it as soon as the engine starts.

Automatic transmission*

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Place selector lever in position P or N.
3. Briefly press Start/Stop button.

The system responds by automatically engaging the starter for a certain period and automatically disengaging it as soon as the engine starts.

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission*

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Engage selector lever position N and make sure that this position is also indicated in instrument cluster.
3. Briefly press Start/Stop button.

The system responds by automatically engaging the starter for a certain period and automatically disengaging it as soon as the engine starts.

▶ If the engine fails to start, depress the brake pedal and press the selector lever to the right then engage the position N. Watch the display in the instrument cluster while doing so. ◀ تلفن شبانه روزی: ۱۸۷۴۲۰۳۱


Special starting conditions

Depress the accelerator pedal half way when starting the engine in the following situations:

- ▶ The engine fails to start on the first attempt, e.g. if it is very hot or cold.
- ▶ The engine is started at very low temperatures, below approx. +5 °F / -15 °C, at high altitudes, over approx. 3,300 ft/1,000 m.

⚠ Avoid frequent starting in quick succession or repeated starting attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or inadequately burned and there is a danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter. ◀

Switching off engine

 Do not remove the remote control from the ignition lock while the vehicle is rolling, otherwise the steering wheel lock would engage while steering.

When leaving the vehicle, always take the remote control with you.

When parking on a downhill incline, apply the handbrake, as otherwise the vehicle could roll away. ◀

Manual transmission

1. Briefly press the Start/Stop button with the vehicle stopped.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Apply the handbrake.

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission*

1. Apply the handbrake.
2. Engage a driving position.
3. Briefly press the Start/Stop button.
If the position N is engaged when the engine is switched off, this is pointed out visually and acoustically.


Automatic transmission*


1. Select the selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Briefly press the Start/Stop button.

Handbrake

The handbrake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked; it brakes the rear wheels.

Indicator lamp

 The indicator lamp lights up, and a signal also sounds when starting off. The handbrake is applied.

 Indicator lamp for Canadian models.


Applying


The lever locks in position automatically.

Releasing




Pull slightly upwards, press the button and lower the lever.

 If exceptional circumstances should make it necessary to engage the handbrake while the vehicle is in motion, do not pull it too strongly. In doing so, continuously press the button of the handbrake lever. Otherwise excessive pressure can lead to the rear wheels locking up and loss of traction – fishtailing – at the rear axle. ◀

 To prevent corrosion and one-sided braking action, occasionally apply the handbrake lightly when the vehicle is slowly coming to a stop if the traffic conditions are suitable. The brake lamps do not light up when the handbrake is applied. ◀

Manual transmission



 While shifting in the 5th/6th gear lane, press the gearshift lever toward the right, otherwise accidental shifting into the 3rd or 4th gear could result in engine damage. ◀

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. When pressing the gearshift lever to the left, overcome some resistance.

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission*

The concept

The SMG Sequential Manual Transmission is an automated manual transmission in which an electrohydraulic system handles the clutching and gear changes.


The SMG is operated with the selector lever and two shift paddles on the steering wheel. It offers you the following functions:

- ▷ Optional manual or automatic operation: Sequential mode or Drive mode
- ▷ You have a choice of two driving programs: Normal or Sport, refer to Dynamic Driving Control page 62
- ▷ Automatic downshifting and prevention of incorrect shifting even in Sequential operation
- ▷ Acceleration assistant, refer to page 63.

Selector lever positions



- ▷ R: Reverse gear
- ▷ N: Neutral
- ▷ One-touch functions for Sequential mode:
+ : manual upshifting
- : manual downshifting
- ▷ D: activate/deactivate the Drive mode

 The transmission automatically shifts into N if the driver's door is opened with the engine running and neither the pedals, the shift paddles nor the selector lever are operated.


This is signaled by an acoustic signal and the flashing display N in the instrument cluster; a message appears on the Control Display. ◀

Gear display



R N 1 to 6

The currently engaged gear is displayed, preceded by a D in Drive mode.

 It is only possible to recognize whether the desired selector lever position is engaged with this display. ◀

Shiftlock

Press the brake pedal before shifting out of N; the shift command will not be executed unless the brake is applied.

R Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

Sequential mode

After every engine start, as soon as the selector lever is pushed to the right and the brake pedal is pressed, the Sequential mode is activated.

You can shift up and down using the shifting paddles or the selector lever. You do not need to remove your foot from the accelerator to do so.

It is also possible to start off in second gear, e.g. in slippery conditions.

In the following situations, SMG thinks for you:

- ▷ Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system.
- ▷ When the vehicle is stationary, the transmission automatically downshifts into first gear.
- ▷ Shortly before dropping below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission downshifts automatically even without your intervention.


D Drive mode

In the Drive mode, all forward gears are shifted automatically.

Shifting from Sequential mode to Drive mode: press selector lever to the right toward D.

Kick-down: for rapid acceleration, e.g. when passing, press the accelerator pedal as far down as it will go. You achieve maximum acceleration.

To switch back into the Sequential mode: press selector lever to the right again toward D or shift using the shifting paddles or the selector lever.

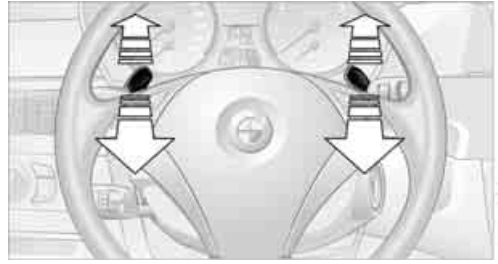
 Start off quickly on slopes. Do not hold the vehicle on a hill by pressing the accelerator, but apply the handbrake instead. Otherwise overheating can occur in the transmission region. ◀

Gear changes

Using selector lever

- ▷ To upshift, pull the selector lever back.
- ▷ To downshift, push the selector lever forward.

Using shift paddles on steering wheel



- ▷ To upshift, pull one of the shift paddles.
- ▷ To downshift, press.

Dynamic Driving Control

The Dynamic Driving Control makes it possible for your BMW to react in an even more performance-oriented manner at the push of a button:

- ▷ The engine responds more spontaneously to accelerator pedal movements.
- ▷ Gearshifts are faster.
- ▷ The engine speed range is used optimally in the Drive mode.
- ▷ Cruise control*: The stored speed is reached more quickly when it is requested.

Activating system



Press the SPORT button.

The LED in the button lights up and SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.


Deactivating system

Press the SPORT button again.


The LED in the button and SPORT in the instrument cluster go out.

Acceleration assistant

The acceleration assistant enables optimized vehicle acceleration at racing car level on road surfaces with good adhesion when starting off.

 Do not use the acceleration assistant too often, otherwise components will wear prematurely. ◀

1. Activate the Dynamic Driving Control.
2. Deactivate DSC, refer to page 87.
3. Quickly press accelerator pedal all the way down: kick-down. The ideal starting-off engine speed is set.

 To maintain the vehicle stability, reactivate DSC afterward. ◀

Automatic transmission with Steptronic*

In addition to fully automatic operation, you can also manually shift with the Steptronic, refer to page 64.

Selector lever positions

P R N D M/S + -

Displays in instrument cluster




P R N D DS M1 to M6

The selector lever position is indicated, and in the manual mode the gear currently engaged.

Changing selector lever positions

- ▷ Only move the selector lever from position P when the engine is running: interlock.
- ▷ With the vehicle stopped, press the brake before shifting out of P or N, otherwise the selector lever is blocked: shiftlock.

 To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start. ◀



A lock prevents accidentally shifting into the selector lever positions R and P. To cancel the lock, press the button on the front of the selector lever, refer to arrow.

P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The rear wheels are locked.

R Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

Can, for example, be engaged in automatic car washes. The vehicle can roll.

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are available.

Under normal operating conditions, the fuel consumption is lowest when driving in position D.

Kick-down

The kick-down mode provides maximum acceleration: press the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle resistance point.

Sport program and manual operation M/S



Move selector lever from position D toward the left into the M/S shifting slot:

The sport program is activated and DS is displayed in the instrument cluster. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

When the selector lever is pressed forward or back, the manual mode is activated and the Steptronic shifts the gear. The instrument cluster shows M1 through M6.

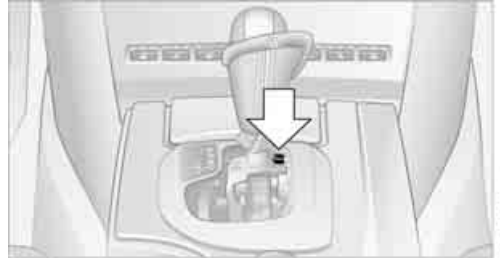
Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system. The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

To use the automatic function again, move the selector lever to the right into position D.

Deactivating selector lever interlock

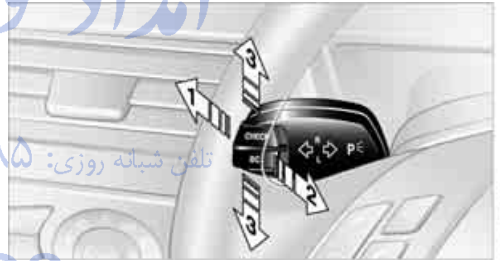
If the selector lever is blocked in the position P even though the button on the selector lever is pressed, the selector lever interlock can be deactivated:

1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve over the selector lever.



3. Press the lever at the point marked in red with the screwdriver from the onboard tool-kit, refer to page 211, and move the selector lever into the desired position.

Turn signals/headlamp flasher




- 1 High beams
- 2 Headlamp flasher
- 3 Turn signals

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To turn off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

 Atypically rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb needs to be replaced. ◀

Signaling briefly

Press lever to resistance point and hold for as long as you wish to signal.

Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever to the resistance point; the turn signal flashes three times.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

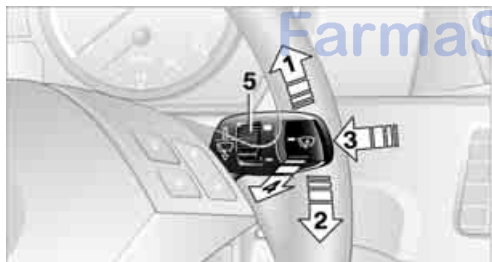
iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Lighting" and press the controller.



5. Select "Triple turn signal activation" and press the controller.
 Triple turn signaling is activated.

Wiper system



- 1 Switching on wipers
- 2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe
- 3 Activating/deactivating rain sensor
- 4 Cleaning windshield, headlamps and BMW Night Vision camera*
- 5 Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Switching on wipers

Pull the lever upward, arrow 1.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.

The system reverts to operation in the intermittent mode when the vehicle is stationary.

Fast wiper speed

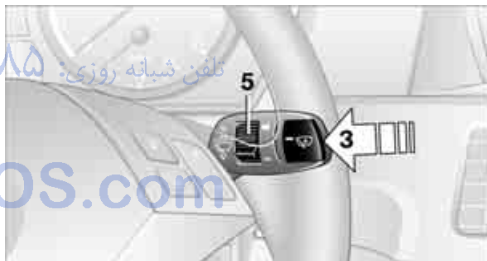
Press twice or press beyond the resistance point.

The system reverts to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Rain sensor

The wiper operation is controlled automatically as a function of the rain intensity. The rain sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Activating rain sensor



Press the button, arrow 3. The LED in the button lights up.

Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Turn the knurled wheel 5.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow 3. The LED goes out.



Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash. Failure to do so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper activation. ◀

Cleaning windshield, headlamps* and BMW Night Vision camera*

Pull the lever, arrow 4.

The system sprays washer fluid against the windshield and activates the wipers for a brief period.

With the vehicle lighting switched on, the headlamps and the BMW Night Vision camera are also cleaned simultaneously at suitable intervals.

! Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do so, your vision could be obscured. To avoid freezing, use a washer fluid antifreeze, refer to Washer fluid. Do not use washing mechanisms when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump. ◀

Windshield washer nozzles

Both windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Sports Wagon: Rear window wiper



- 1 Intermittent mode. When reverse gear is engaged, continuous operation is switched on automatically
- 2 Cleaning the rear window

! Do not use washing mechanisms when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump. ◀

Washer fluid

! Washer fluid antifreeze is flammable. Always keep it well away from sparks and open flames, and store it in tightly closed containers well out of the reach of children. Always observe the instructions for use provided on the containers. ◀

Washer fluid reservoir



All washer jets are supplied from one reservoir. Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

▷ In order to maintain the mixture ratio, mix the washer fluid before filling. ◀

Capacity

Sedan:

approx. 3.2 US quarts/3 liters, with headlamp washer system* approx. 5.3 US quarts/5 liters.

Sports Wagon: approx. 5.3 US quarts/5 liters.

Cruise control*

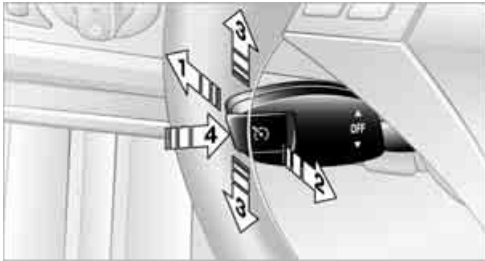
The concept

The cruise control is available for use at speeds of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h and higher. The vehicle stores and maintains the speed that you set using the lever mounted on the steering column.

! Do not use the cruise control under driving conditions that do not permit a constant speed, e.g. when driving on winding roads, in heavy traffic or in poor road conditions such as snow, rain, ice, and loose road surface.

Otherwise you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident. ◀

One lever for all functions



- 1 Maintaining speed, storing speed, and accelerating
- 2 Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating
- 3 Interrupting cruise control
- 4 Resuming stored speed

Maintaining speed, storing speed, and accelerating

Press lever to resistance point, arrow 1:

The speed currently being driven is maintained and stored. The display 1 in the speedometer, see below, indicates this regulated speed. Every time you press the lever, the vehicle's speed increases by roughly 1 mph/1 km/h.

Press lever to resistance point for a longer time: The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. The system maintains and stores your current speed as soon as you release the lever.

Press the lever beyond the resistance point: increase speed by 5 mph/10 km/h.

If, on a downhill grade, the engine's braking effect is not sufficient, the controlled speed can be exceeded. Speed can drop on uphill grades if the engine output is insufficient.

Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating

Pull the lever, arrow 2:

Functions are the same as 1, only the vehicle speed is reduced.

Interrupting cruise control

Press the lever up or down, arrow 3.

In addition, cruise control is automatically deactivated:

- ▷ When the brakes are applied
- ▷ When the clutch pedal is depressed or the automatic transmission/SMG is shifted into the N position
- ▷ When the DSC comes on

Resuming stored speed

Press button 4:

The stored speed is resumed and maintained.

Deactivating system

When the ignition is switched off, the system is deactivated and the stored speed is deleted.

Displays in instrument cluster



- 1 Stored desired speed
- 2 Selected desired speed appears briefly

Active cruise control*

The concept

With active cruise control, you can select a desired speed which is not only automatically maintained when driving on open roadways, but also varied to maintain a selected distance setting as slower traffic is encountered.

Active cruise control is a technological advance over the familiar cruise control and is a welcome relief from the constant adjustment of speed that can accompany driving in traffic on freeways or other high-speed thoroughfares.

Especially on longer trips, the system can reduce fatigue and tension, while increasing your enjoyment of driving. Please use it safely and responsibly.

In addition to holding a steady cruising speed, if you encounter slower vehicles ahead, active cruise control will, within the scope of given possibilities, adjust your vehicle's speed automatically so that you can flow with the traffic without having to make constant adjustments. If, for example, while cruising at the selected speed, you begin to approach a slower vehicle ahead of you in the same lane, the system will reduce your vehicle's speed to the same as that of the vehicle ahead to maintain your selected distance setting between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. You can vary the distance, which is additionally speed-dependent. Based on your selected distance setting, the system automatically decreases the throttle setting and lightly applies the brakes if necessary. The vehicle brake lamps will automatically illuminate to signal a following driver to take action. In addition, it may be necessary for the vehicle or the driver to downshift, depending on the kind of transmission your vehicle is equipped with, to maintain the distance setting selected. If the vehicle ahead speeds up or when the lane ahead becomes clear, your vehicle will accelerate to the speed you have selected by increasing the throttle setting and shifting gears automatically or by the driver as needed. Your selected speed will be held when driving downhill, too.

⚠ Active cruise control is not and must not be used as a collision avoidance/warning system. ◀

⚠ Since this active cruise control system is a new technology and operates differently from conventional cruise control systems which you may be accustomed to, you are strongly urged to read all of the pages relating to this system before use. Pay special attention to the information contained in the Things to know about active cruise control section beginning on page 71. ◀

Professional navigation system*

If a navigation DVD is in the drive, refer to page 132, the system adjusts the accelerating and braking behavior of the vehicle to the road you are driving on.

▶ To ensure that the system is informed of the current course of the road, always use the latest navigation DVD if possible. ◀

When the vehicle position is unknown, e.g. when you leave the map area, this influence of the navigation system is not available.

Brake pedal feel

- ▶ When the system brakes and you also depress the brake pedal, a somewhat different braking feeling results.
- ▶ Any noises produced during automatic braking are normal.

Manual transmission

You can shift with the cruise control activated. Shifting information is provided or the system deactivates itself if you drive at very high or very low engine speeds for a longer period.

SMG تلفن شبانه روز

In the Sequential mode, shifting information is provided or the system deactivates itself if you drive at very high engine speeds for a longer period.

In the Drive mode the SMG acts similarly to an automatic transmission in the D position.

Operating active cruise control



- 1 Store and increase desired speed
- 2 Store and decrease desired speed

- 3 Deactivate system, refer to page 70
- 4 Resume stored desired speed and distance, refer to page 70
- 5 Select distance to vehicle driving ahead, refer to page 69


Maintaining current speed

Briefly press lever, arrow 1, or briefly pull lever, arrow 2, at a driving speed of more than approx. 20 mph or 30 km/h.



The speed currently being driven is stored and maintained. It is indicated on the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

Selecting desired speed

 Adjust your desired speed to the traffic conditions and remain ready to brake at all times, otherwise accidents can occur. ◀

The desired speed can drop on uphill grades if the engine output is insufficient.

Increasing in steps

Briefly press the lever repeatedly up to the resistance point or beyond, arrow 1, until the desired speed is displayed.

- ▷ Each time the lever is briefly pressed up to the resistance point, the desired speed increases by approx. 1 mph or 1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the lever is briefly pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is increased by a maximum of 5 mph or 10 km/h until the maximum speed of 110 mph or 180 km/h is reached.

The speed then displayed is stored and reached on a clear road.

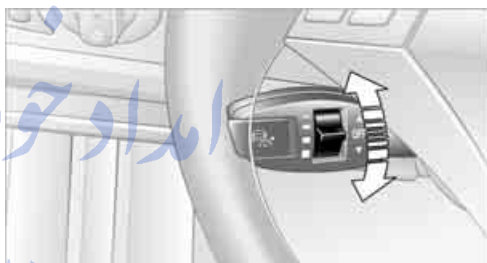
Decreasing in steps

Repeatedly pull the lever up to the resistance point or beyond, arrow 2, until the desired speed is displayed.

- ▷ Each time the lever is pulled up to the resistance point, the desired speed decreases by approx. 1 mph or 1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the lever is pulled beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is decreased by a maximum of 5 mph or 10 km/h until the minimum speed of 20 mph or 30 km/h is reached.

The speed then displayed is stored and reached on a clear road.

Select distance



- ▷ Rotary switch downward: Increase distance.
- ▷ Rotary switch upward: Decrease distance.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.



Distance 1




Distance 2



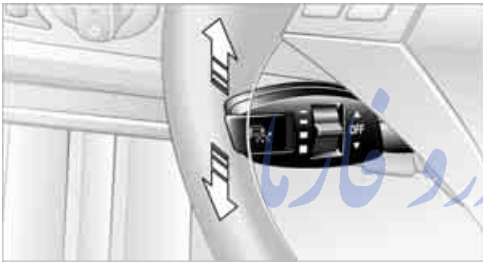
Distance 3
This distance is set when the system is used for the first time after starting the engine.



Distance 4

 Use good judgment to select the appropriate following distance given road conditions, traffic, applicable laws and driving recommendations for a safe following distance. ◀


Deactivate system



Press the lever up or down. The displays in the instrument cluster disappear.

You also deactivate the system when you brake, shift very slowly or into neutral, or engage the selector lever position N. In addition, the system is deactivated automatically:

- ▶ When you activate DTC Dynamic Traction Control
- ▶ When you deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control
- ▶ When the system does not recognize any objects for a longer time, e.g. on infrequently traveled roads without a shoulder or guard rails, or if the radar sensor is covered with dirt, refer to page 71
- ▶ When the speed is reduced to below 20 mph/30 km/h due to a traffic situation

 The system deactivates automatically when the speed is set to below 20 mph/30 km/h. A signal sounds and a message appears on the Control Display. The active

intervention of the driver is required, otherwise accidents can occur. ◀

Resume stored desired speed and distance


Press button 4.

The displays appear in the instrument cluster.

When you switch off the ignition, the stored desired speed is deleted.

Displays in instrument cluster



- 1 Stored desired speed
- 2 Lights up yellow: vehicle driving ahead is detected
Flashes red, a signal sounds: the system cannot establish the distance, apply the brakes yourself
Flashes yellow: driving stability control systems intervene, the active cruise control is deactivated
- 3 Selected distance to vehicle driving ahead: lights up as soon as the system is activated
- 4 Selected desired speed appears briefly
 If the display ACC --- mph/km/h briefly appears in the instrument cluster, it might be that conditions necessary for operation are not currently being met. To call up Check Control messages, refer to page 79. ◀

Warning lamps



The display **2** flashes red and a signal sounds.

The system requests that you intervene by braking or with an evasive maneuver. The active cruise control cannot automatically restore the distance to the vehicle driving ahead. However, this display cannot relieve the driver of the responsibility for adjusting the desired speed and driving style to the traffic conditions.



The display **2** flashes yellow. Automatic intervention by ABS or DSC. The active cruise control intervenes by braking until you take over actively.

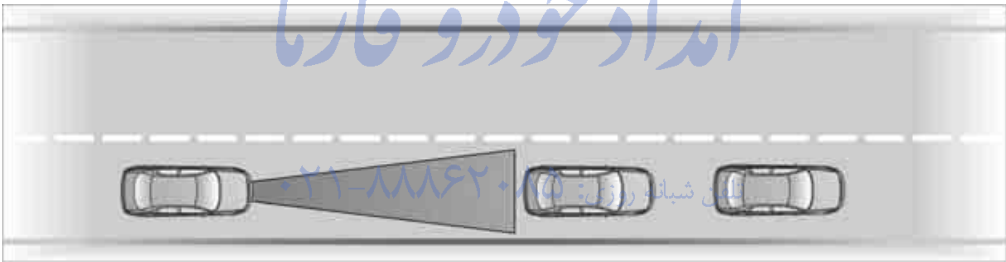
Radar sensor



Heavy rain, dirt, snow or ice can restrict the detection of vehicles driving ahead. If necessary, clean the front radar sensor under the bumper. Exercise particular care when removing snow and ice.

If the sensor is not aligned properly, the active cruise control cannot be activated.

Things to know about active cruise control



! As with conventional cruise control systems, active cruise control in no way diminishes or substitutes for the driver's own personal responsibility, alertness and awareness in adjusting speed, braking or otherwise controlling the vehicle. The driver should decide when to use the system on the basis of road, traffic, visibility, and weather conditions. Active cruise control is intended for use on highway-type roadways where traffic is moving relatively smoothly. Do not use this system in city driving; heavy traffic such as during rush hour; on curvy, winding roads, slippery roads or roads with sharp curves such as highway off-ramps; during inclement weather such as snow, strong rain or fog; or when entering interchanges, service/parking areas or toll booths. It is also important to regulate your vehicle's

speed and distance setting within applicable legal limits. Always be ready to take action or apply the brakes if necessary, especially when the system is actively following a vehicle in front of you. ◀

! Always remember that the range and ability of the system does have physical limitations. It will not apply the brakes or decelerate your vehicle when there is a slow-moving vehicle, stopped vehicle or stationary object ahead of you, as for example, at a traffic light or a parked vehicle. Also, the system does not react to oncoming traffic, pedestrians or other types of potential traffic such as a rider on horseback. It is also possible that the system may not detect smaller moving objects such as motorcycles or bicycles. Be especially alert when encountering any of these situations as the

system will neither automatically brake, nor provide a warning to you. Also, be aware that every decrease in the distance setting allows your vehicle to come closer to a vehicle in front of you and requires a heightened amount of alertness. ◀

If while your vehicle is actively following a vehicle in front of you and the vehicle ahead speeds up or the lane ahead becomes clear, then your vehicle will accelerate to the speed you have selected. Be aware that changing to a clear, unobstructed lane will also result in your vehicle accelerating.

⚠ Be certain to deactivate the system when you pull into an exit lane for a highway off-ramp. ◀

Also, vehicles traveling in a staggered manner on a highway may cause a delay in the system's reaction to a vehicle in front of you or may cause the system to react to a vehicle actually in the lane next to you. Always be ready to take action or apply the brakes if necessary.

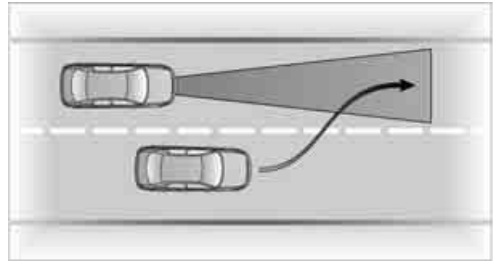
Active cruise control can only decelerate the vehicle to approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. If the system reduces vehicle speed below 20 mph/30 km/h or if DSC/ABS is engaged while driving, the system will automatically deactivate.

⚠ Remember, the system cannot stop your vehicle. In addition, the system is deactivated whenever the driver applies the vehicle brakes, shifts the transmission to neutral/N, or deactivates DSC. After any deactivation, the system will no longer automatically activate the vehicle brakes, which means the driver must intervene and resume manual braking. You should then reactivate the system only when you are fully aware of the prior speed and distance settings. ◀

Active cruise control may brake when you reduce the stored desired speed; however, the driver must constantly monitor traffic and intervene if necessary.

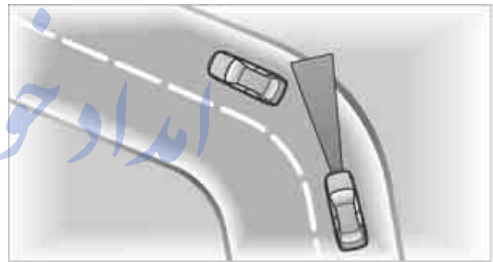
When you switch off the engine or ignition, active cruise control is fully switched off, too, and any settings you have selected are canceled.

Swerving vehicles



When a vehicle moves from an adjacent lane into your lane, active cruise control will not recognize this vehicle until it is fully in your lane ahead of your vehicle.

Behavior in curves




Because of the limited range of the system, it is possible that in curves or on the peaks and valleys of hilly roads, a vehicle ahead may be recognized late, or not at all. Therefore, it is up to the driver to select a speed that is prudent in view of the curves and terrain of the roadway.




In approaching a curve, it is possible that active cruise control would react briefly to a vehicle in the adjacent lane. In addition, the system can sense if your vehicle is in a curve and may not accelerate. If your vehicle decelerates in either

case, you can choose to overcome the deceleration by briefly pressing the accelerator pedal.

Driver interventions

 Anytime the driver presses down on the accelerator pedal, any automatic braking action by the system is interrupted until the pedal is fully released. After doing this, release the accelerator and the system again controls your cruising speed and distance setting. While driving with the system activated, resting your foot on the accelerator pedal will cause the system not to brake even if necessary. Be certain that floor mats or other objects on the vehicle floor do not interfere with movement of the accelerator pedal. ◀

 While active cruise control is capable of braking your vehicle automatically when you approach a slower vehicle ahead, it is important to be aware that the ability of the system to apply the brakes is also limited, e.g. when you reduce your desired speed sharply. The system cannot stop your vehicle. It uses only a portion of braking system capacity and does not utilize the full capacity of the vehicle braking system. Therefore, the system cannot decrease your speed due to large differences in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. Example: when you approach a vehicle traveling at a much lower speed than your own speed, such as approaching a toll booth or when a much slower vehicle cuts in front of you at close range. ◀

Everything under control

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock



- 1 Time, outside temperature and data
- 2 Odometer and trip odometer
- 3 Press button:
 - ▷ with ignition switched on, trip odometer is reset
 - ▷ briefly display the time, outside temperature and odometer with the ignition switched off

From radio readiness the outside temperature and the time are displayed.

Date retrieval:

Press CHECK button on turn signal lever, refer to page 80.

Time and date setting, refer to page 82.

You can set the unit of measure °F or °C on the Control Display, refer to Units of measure on page 84.

Outside temperature warning

If the display drops to +37 °F / +3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. There is an increased danger of ice.

⚠ Even at temperatures above +37 °F / +3 °C ice can form. Therefore, drive carefully, e.g. on bridges and sections of road in the shade, otherwise there is an increased accident risk. ◀

Tachometer



The white-striped advance warning field, arrow 1, changes depending on the engine temperature. With increasing engine temperature the advance warning field becomes correspondingly smaller. Avoid allowing the engine speed to rise as far as the orange warning sector whenever possible.

Be sure to avoid engine speeds in the red warning field, arrow 2. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant, and with it the engine become too hot, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display.

Checking coolant level, refer to page 207.

Energy Control



Displays the current fuel consumption. This allows you to see whether your current driving style is conducive to fuel economy with minimum exhaust emissions.

Fuel gauge




Fuel tank capacity: approx. 18.5 gallons/ 70 liters. You will find information on refueling on page 194.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

Reserve

After the reserve quantity has been reached, a message briefly appears on the Control Display; the remaining range is shown in the computer. Below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km, the message remains on the Control Display.

 Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur. ◀

Computer

Displays in instrument cluster




To display the information, press the BC button in the turn signal lever from radio readiness.

The following information is displayed in the specified order:

- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is projected based on the driving style over the last 20 miles/ 30 km. تلفن شبانه روزی

 Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur. ◀

Average speed

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine switched off are not included in the calculations of average speed.

To reset average speed: press BC button on turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

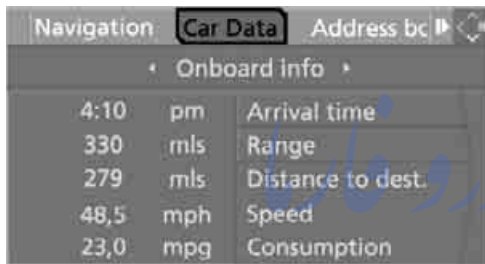
You can use the Control Display to view your fuel consumption rate over two different distances, refer to Displays on Control Display or Trip computer*.

To reset average fuel consumption: press BC button on turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

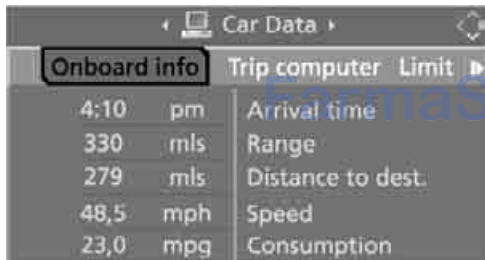
Displays on Control Display

You can also call up the computer via the iDrive. For explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".
Without navigation system*:
Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.



4. Select "Onboard info" and press the controller.



- ▷ Estimated time of arrival at destination:
 - ▷ Entering a distance manually in the computer, see below.
 - ▷ Entering a destination in the navigation system*, refer to page 133.
- ▷ Cruising range

- ▷ Distance to destination:
 - ▷ Entering a distance manually in the computer, see below.
 - ▷ Entering a destination in the navigation system*, refer to page 133.
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption

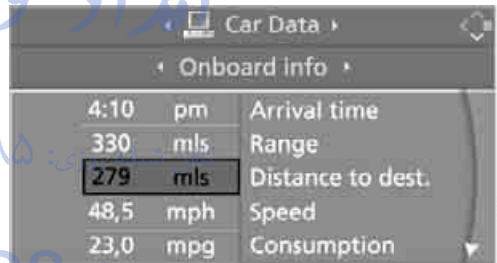
Resetting values

You can reset the values for the average speed and average fuel consumption:

1. Select the respective menu item and press the controller.
2. To confirm your selection, press the controller again.

Entering a distance manually

1. Select "Distance to dest." and press the controller.



2. Turn the controller to select the distance to your destination. If needed, hold it against a slight resistance to enter a larger difference.
3. Press the controller to apply the setting.

The distance is automatically preset during the destination guidance of the navigation system*.

Trip computer*

The trip computer is suitable, for example, for a vacation trip.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
Without navigation system*:
Open "Car Data".

3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Trip computer" and press the controller.



- ▶ Departure time
- ▶ Driving time
- ▶ Distance traveled
- ▶ Average speed
- ▶ Average fuel consumption

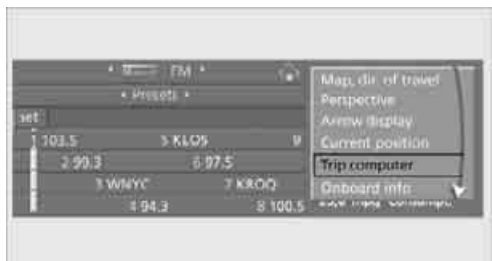
Starting or stopping the trip computer, or resetting all values:

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item.
3. Press the controller.

Display options

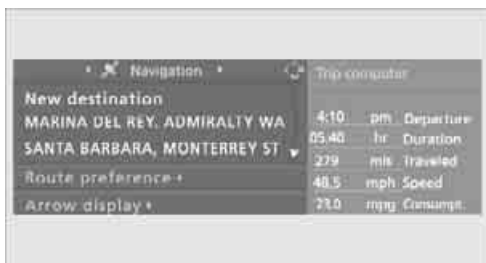
You can display the computer or the trip computer in the assistance window.

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.



2. Select "Onboard info" or "Trip computer".

3. Press the controller.



Service requirements



The remaining driving distance and the date for the next maintenance are displayed briefly with the ignition switched on.

- ▶ Your BMW Service Advisor can determine your vehicle's current service requirements by reading out the data stored in the remote control. ◀

Additional information

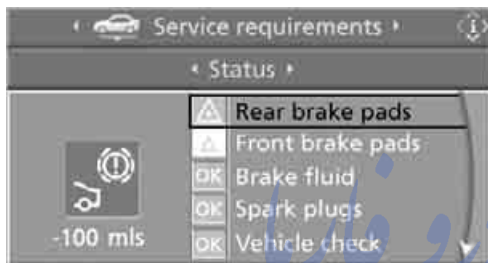
You can select a display of more detailed information on the maintenance scope on the Control Display. For explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Service" and press the controller.

4. Select "Service requirements" and press the controller.



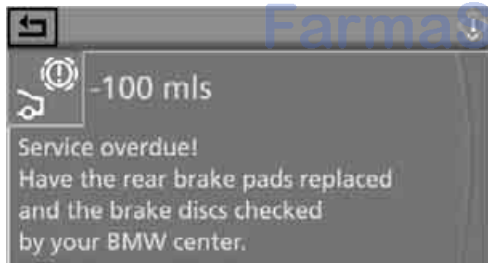
5. Select "Status" and press the controller.



The display shows a list of selected service and maintenance procedures, as well as legally mandated inspections.

You can request more detailed information on every entry.

Select the entry and press the controller.



To exit from the menu:

1. Select the arrow and press the controller.

Symbols



No service is currently required.



The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching. Please arrange a service appointment.

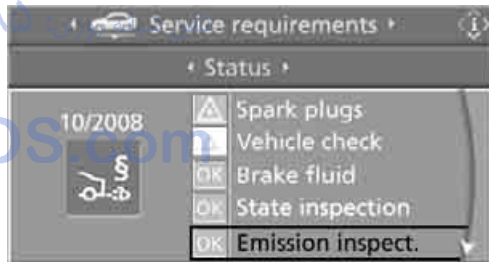


The service deadline has already passed.

Entering dates for state emission and vehicle inspections*

Make sure the date on the Control Display is always set correctly, refer to page 82, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Service" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service requirements" and press the controller.
5. Select "Status" and press the controller.
6. Select "Emission inspect." or "State inspection" and press the controller.



7. Select "Set service date" and press the controller. The month is highlighted.
8. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.



9. Press the controller to apply the setting. The year is highlighted.
10. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
11. Press the controller to apply the setting. The date entry is stored.

To exit the menu:

↩ Select the arrow and press the controller.

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control monitors functions in the vehicle and issues a message if there is a malfunction in the monitored systems. This kind of Check Control message consists of indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster, and if necessary an acoustic signal and text messages at the bottom of the Control Display.

Indicator and warning lamps



Indicator and warning lamps can light up both in the display area **1** and in the display **2** in various combinations and colors.



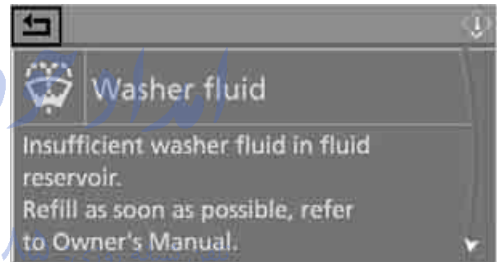
▲ means that a Check Control message has been generated. The symbol continues to be visible even when the Check Control message

disappears after a short time. The warning lamps and text messages are stored and can be displayed later, also refer to page 80.

Explanatory text messages



Text message at the bottom edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.



You can display additional information on most Check Control messages later, e.g. on the cause of the malfunction and on corresponding need for action, see below.

In the case of corresponding urgency, this information is displayed immediately when the related lamp lights up.

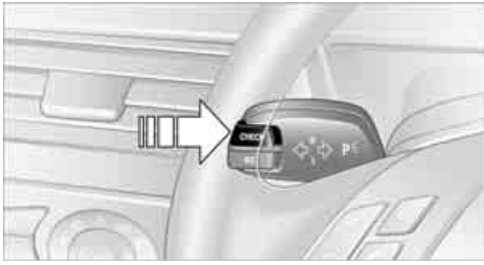
Exit the displayed information:

↩ Select the arrow and press the controller.

Importance of Check Control messages

Important Check Control messages continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been corrected. They cannot be deleted. If a number of malfunctions occur simultaneously, they are displayed in succession.

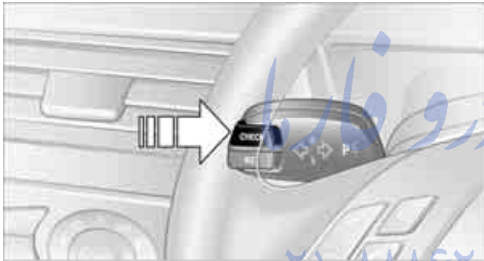
Less important messages disappear after approx. 20 seconds, but remain in memory.



To hide these Check Control messages:
Press the CHECK button on turn signal lever.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. Hold the button down:
The first stored message is displayed.



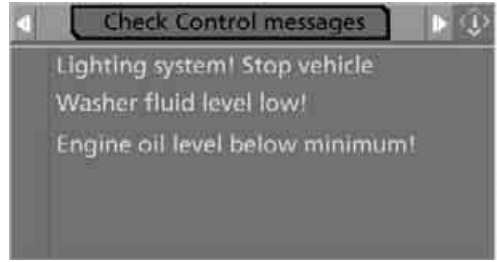
2. Press the button:
When the button is pressed again, a different message is displayed.

Displaying additional information later

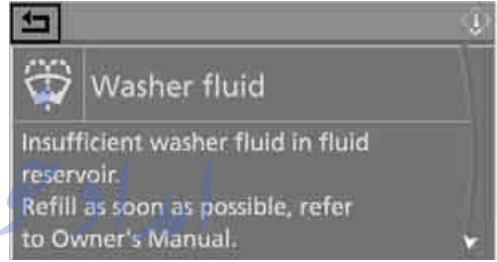
iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Service" and press the controller.

4. Select "Check Control messages" and press the controller.



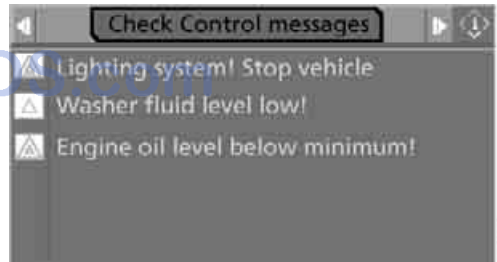
5. Select a text message and press the controller.






To exit the display:

1. Select the arrow and press the controller.

Indication of malfunction urgency



Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the stored Check Control messages are also displayed with the following symbols:

-  No malfunctions are present in the monitored systems.
-  Malfunctions are present in the monitored systems. Depending on the malfunction, supplementary information is shown on the Control Display.
-  Malfunctions are present in the monitored systems. Depending on the malfunction, supplementary information is shown on the Control Display.

The symbols also indicate the status of the service requirements display, refer to page 77.

Displays after completion of trip

Malfunction reports generated during the trip are shown consecutively when you switch off the ignition.

Before the display disappears, you can display the messages once again. Press the CHECK button for approx. 2 seconds. If several messages are present, you can continue to press the CHECK button to view them in succession. The display goes out

- ▷ automatically after a brief period
- ▷ when you press the CHECK button again for approximately 2 seconds

Speed limit

You can enter a speed and a Check Control message indicates when you have reached this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.

You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing limit

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
Without navigation system*:
Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.

4. Select "Limit" and press the controller.



5. Select the speed value and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the limit. If needed, hold it against a slight resistance to enter a larger difference.
7. Press the controller to apply the setting. The limit is automatically activated.

Applying your current speed as limit

Select "Select current speed" and press the controller. The system adopts your current speed as the limit.

Activating limit

Select "On" and press the controller.
 Limit is automatically activated.

Stopwatch

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
Without navigation system*:
Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.

4. Select "Stopwatch" and press the controller.



Starting, stopping or resetting

- ▶ Select "Start" and press the controller. The stopwatch starts at the displayed time.
- ▶ Select "Reset" and press the controller. The stopwatch is reset and it restarts if it was running beforehand.
- ▶ Select "Stop" and press the controller. This stops the timer.

Taking an intermediate time reading

Select "Interim time" and press the controller. The interim time appears below the ongoing primary stopwatch count.

- ▶ All of the remaining functions remain available at all times while the stopwatch is running. The stopwatch continues operation in the background. ◀

Settings on Control Display

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

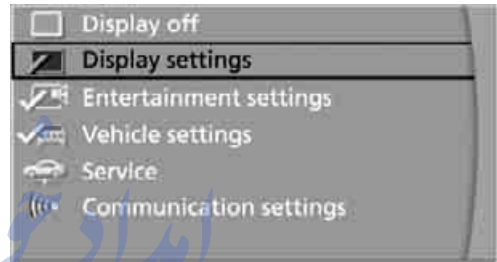
1. Press the **MENU** button once or twice until the start menu appears.



2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.

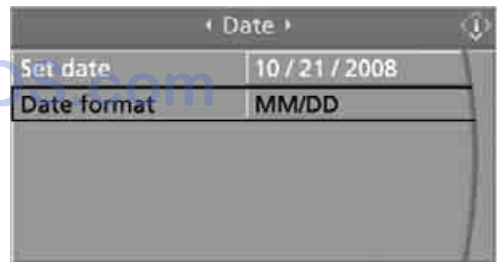


3. Turn the controller until "Display settings" is selected and press the controller.

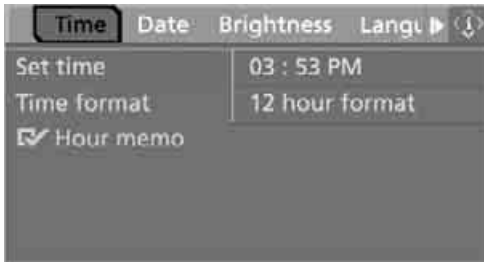


Setting time

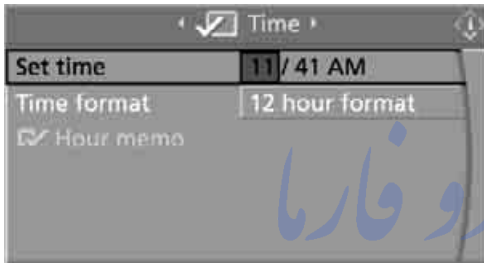
1. Move the controller once to the front if necessary to change to the first field from the top. تلفن شبانه ۰۸۵ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵



- Turn the controller until "Time" is selected and press the controller.



- Turn the controller until "Set time" is selected and press the controller.



Making settings

- Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
- Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

The changed time is stored.

Switching on hour signal*

You will hear three tones just before each full hour.

Select "Hour memo" and press the controller.

The hour signal is activated.

Setting time format

- Select "Time format" and press the controller.
- Select the desired format and press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting date

- Select "Date" and press the controller.



- Select "Set date" and press the controller. The first section of the date display is highlighted, in this case the month.
- Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
- Press the controller to apply the setting. The next setting is highlighted.
- Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the date is stored.

Changing date format

- Select "Date format" and press the controller.
- Select the desired format and press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness of Control Display

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting.

- Select "Brightness" and press the controller.



2. If necessary, move the controller to the right to select "Display".
3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Units of measure

You can change the units of measure for consumption, distances, temperature and pressure.

1. Select "Units" and press the controller.

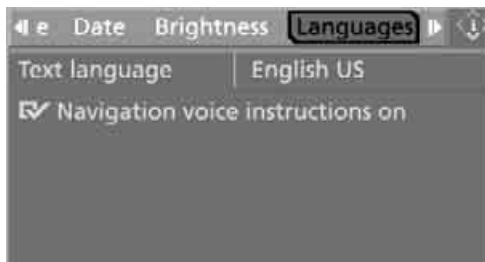


2. Select the menu item to be set and press the controller.
3. Select the desired unit of measure and press the controller.

The settings are stored for the remote key currently in use.

Language on Control Display

1. Select "Languages" and press the controller.




2. Select "Text language" and press the controller. You can change the language of the text displays.

Technology for comfort, convenience and safety

PDC Park Distance Control*

The concept

The PDC assists you when you are parking. Acoustic signals and an optical display* alert you to the approach of an object from behind your vehicle. To measure the distance, there are four ultrasonic sensors in each bumper. The range of these sensors is approx. 7 ft/2 m. However, an acoustic warning first sound for the sensors at the front and at the two rear corners at approx. 24 in/60 cm, and for the center rear sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

 PDC is a parking aid that can indicate objects when they are approached slowly, as is usually the case when parking. Avoid approaching an object at high speed, otherwise the physical circumstances would mean that the system warning was too late. ◀

Automatic activation

The system starts to operate automatically approx. 1 second after you select reverse gear or move the selector lever into the R position with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Wait this short period before driving.

Manual activation



Press button, the LED lights up.

Manual deactivation

Press the button again; the LED goes out.

After driving approx. 165 ft/50 m or at over approx. 20 mph/30 km/h, the system is switched off and the LED goes out. You can reactivate the system manually as needed.

Signal tones

When nearing an object, the position is correspondingly indicated by an interval tone. Thus, an object detected to the left rear of the vehicle will be indicated by a signal tone from the left rear speaker, etc. As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

An intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- ▷ if you remain in front of an object that was only detected by one of the corner sensors
- ▷ if you drive parallel to a wall

Malfunction

The LED in the button flashes and a message appears on the Control Display. PDC is malfunctioning. Have the system checked.

To prevent this problem, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. Do not spray the sensors with high-pressure cleaners for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 4 in/10 cm to them.

PDC with visual warning*

You can also have the system show distances to objects on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already shown there before a signal tone sounds. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "PDC" is selected and press the controller.



5. Select "PDC display on" and press the controller.
 - The PDC screen is activated.

The display appears on the Control Display as soon as PDC is activated.

System limits

⚠ Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstructions always remains with the driver. Even when sensors are provided, there is a blind spot in which objects can no longer be detected. This applies especially in those cases where the system approaches the physical constraints of ultrasonic measurement, as occurs with tow bars and trailer couplings, and in the vicinity of thin or wedge-shaped objects. Low objects already displayed, e.g. a curb, can disappear from the detection area of the sensors again before a continuous tone sounds. Higher, protruding objects, e.g. ledges, cannot be detected. Loud sources of sound, inside and outside the vehicle, could drown out the PDC signal tone. ◀

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW is equipped with an extended array of systems designed to enhance and maintain vehicle stability under extreme conditions.

ABS Antilock Brake System

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during full braking. Active safety is thus increased.

The ABS is operational every time you start the engine. Braking safely refer to page 125.

CBC Cornering Brake Control

When braking during curves or when braking during a lane change, driving stability and steering response are improved further.

Electronic brake-force distribution

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

DBC Dynamic Brake Control

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost and thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system exploits all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the full braking.

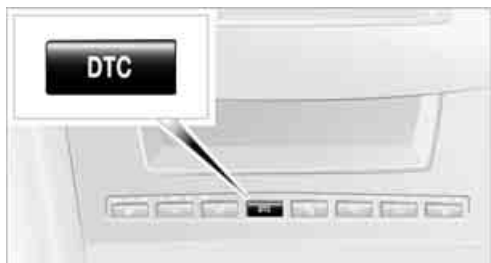
DSC Dynamic Stability Control

DSC prevents traction loss in the driving wheels when starting off and accelerating. DSC also identifies unstable driving conditions, such as a loss of traction at the rear of the vehicle or sliding of the vehicle in its front wheels. In these cases, DSC helps the vehicle maintain a safe course within physical limits by reducing engine output and through braking actions in the individual wheels.

⚠ The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC. An appropriate driving style always remains the responsibility of the

driver. Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin further by taking risks. ◀

Deactivating DSC



Press the button until the DSC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up, but not longer than approx. 10 seconds. DTC Dynamic Traction Control and DSC are deactivated together. Stabilizing and drive output promoting actions are no longer executed. In addition, the stability promoting intervention of the active steering* is deactivated, refer to page 93.

A message appears on the Control Display. Please note any supplementary information that appears there.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC

Press the button; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

For better control



The indicator lamp flashes:
DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up:
DSC is deactivated.

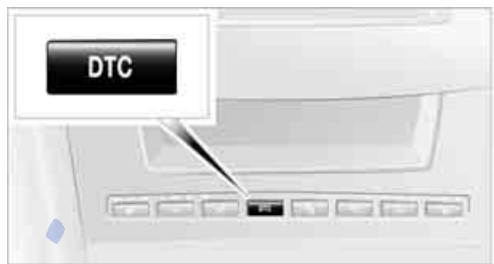
DTC Dynamic Traction Control

DTC is a version of DSC in which the drive output is optimized for particular road conditions, e.g. unplowed snow-covered roads. The system assures the maximal drive output, but with reduced driving stability. It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- ▶ When driving on snowy inclines, in slush, or on unplowed, snow-covered road surfaces
- ▶ When rocking a stuck vehicle free or starting off in deep snow or on loose ground
- ▶ When driving with snow chains*

Activating DTC



Press the button briefly; the DTC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

For better control



The indicator lamp flashes:
DTC controls the drive forces and brake forces.



The indicator lamp lights up:
DTC is activated.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again; the DTC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

xDrive on 525xi, 530xi

xDrive is the 4-wheel drive system of your BMW. The combined effects of xDrive and DSC further optimize the traction and dynamic driving characteristics. The 4-wheel drive system xDrive variably distributes the drive torque to the front and rear axle depending on the driving situation and prevailing road conditions.

HDC Hill Descent Control on 525xi, 530xi

The concept

HDC is a system for driving downhill in steep terrain. This system reduces vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients, thus allowing you to maintain even better control of your BMW under these conditions. The vehicle moves at approximately twice walking speed without active intervention from the driver.

HDC is available for activation at vehicle speeds below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h. When driving down steep hills with a speed below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h, the vehicle reduces speed automatically down to approximately double walking speed, approx. 7 mph/12 km/h, and then maintains this speed at a constant.

You can use the accelerator or brakes to vary this automatically controlled speed within a range extending from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h to 15 mph/25 km/h.

You can specify a target speed within the same range by using the lever of the cruise control.

Activating HDC

You can activate HDC:

- ▷ with the programmable buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 53
- ▷ or via iDrive

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "HDC" and press the controller.



5. Select "HDC on" and press the controller.

The HDC display is shown in the instrument cluster.

If the vehicle is automatically braked, a message is displayed on the Control Display for approx. 20 seconds.

Deactivating HDC

When you use the programmable buttons on the steering wheel or via iDrive, the HDC display goes out.

Over approx. 37 mph/60 km/h HDC is immediately deactivated, and after approx. 10 seconds when the ignition is switched off.

Using HDC

Manual transmission:

Use HDC in low gears and reverse gear.

Automatic transmission:

You can use HDC in every drive position.

Displays in instrument cluster



- 1 Display for target speed
- 2 HDC display

Malfunction

If the HDC display goes out in the HDC mode or is not shown:

HDC is temporarily not available, as the brake temperature is too high.

Dynamic Drive*

The concept

Dynamic Drive minimizes body roll and optimizes vehicle stability during cornering and evasive maneuvers.


Dynamic Drive is based on active stabilizers on the front and rear axles. Suspension compliance adapts to suit driving conditions, varying from performance-oriented during cornering to smooth and comfort-oriented when the vehicle is proceeding in a straight line. During vehicle operation, the system continuously runs through closed-loop control cycles lasting only fractions of a second.

The system assumes operational status each time you start the engine.

Malfunction



The warning lamp lights up yellow and a message is shown on the Control Display. There is a malfunction in the system. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

 If a malfunction occurs, please remember to adapt your speed accordingly, especially in curves.

The suspension will be noticeably softer and the vehicle will display a greater tendency to tilt during cornering and in crosswinds.

If a message stating that you should stop is shown on the Control Display, stop at a suitable location and switch off the engine as soon as possible. In this case the oil level in the reservoir may have dropped below the minimum, possibly owing to a leak in the hydraulic system. Do not continue driving, but instead contact your BMW center. ◀

Sports Wagon: Self-leveling suspension



xDrive: the vehicle is raised somewhat at the rear after locking. This is normal and is linked to minor noises. ◀

Malfunction



The warning lamp for self-leveling suspension lights up yellow and a message is shown on the Control Display. A malfunction has occurred in the self-leveling suspension. Stop and check the vehicle. If it is considerably lower at the rear than at the front, and possibly also on one side – rear left compared to rear right –, go to the nearest BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Drive with appropriate caution in the meantime. The vehicle has reduced ground clearance and driving comfort may be noticeably reduced. Even if the position of the vehicle is normal, go to the nearest BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The concept

The Flat Tire Monitor keeps track of the inflation pressures in the tires as you drive. The system provides an alert whenever the inflation pressure drops significantly in relation to the pressure in another tire.

In the event of a pressure loss, the rolling radius and therefore the rotation speed of the wheels change. This change is detected and is reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be initialized for the correct tire inflation pressure.

- ▶ The initialization must be repeated after each time the tire inflation pressure is corrected and after every tire or wheel change. ◀

System limits

⚠ The Flat Tire Monitor cannot indicate sudden severe tire damage caused by outside factors and does not detect a natural, even pressure drop in all four tires. ◀

In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

- ▶ System has not been initialized
- ▶ Driving on snowy or slippery road surface
- ▶ Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- ▶ Driving with snow chains*

When you are driving with the compact wheel* the Flat Tire Monitor is unable to function.

Initializing system

▶ The initialization finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically. Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains* or compact wheel*. ◀

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "FTM" and press the controller.



5. Start the engine, but do not start driving.

6. Select "Set tire pressure" and press the controller.
7. Select "Yes" and press the controller.



8. Start to drive. The message "Initializing..." is displayed.

The initialization finishes during driving. Then the message "Status: FTM active" appears on the Control Display again.

Indication of a flat tire

⚠ The warning lamp lights up red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds.

There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Identify damaged tire.

▶ If identification is not possible, contact a BMW center. ◀

3. Replace the damaged wheel, refer to Changing wheels on page 215.

Run-flat tires*

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

⚠ If the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires, refer to page 201, do not continue driving. Continuing to drive with a flat tire could cause severe accidents. ◀

2. At the next opportunity, check the air pressure in all four tires.



If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. The system must then be initialized. ◀

- In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guide values:

- ▷ With a light load:
1 to 2 persons without luggage:
approx. 155 miles/250 km
- ▷ With a medium load:
2 persons, luggage compartment or cargo area full, or 4 persons without luggage:
approx. 94 miles/150 km
- ▷ With a full load:
from 4 persons, luggage compartment or cargo area full:
approx. 30 miles/50 km



Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics. If unusual vibrations or loud noises occur while the vehicle is being driven, this can indicate final failure of the damaged tire. Reduce speed and stop at a suitable location as soon as possible, otherwise pieces of the tire could become detached and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, but instead contact your BMW center. ◀

TPM Tire Pressure Monitor*

The concept

TPM checks the tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system reports when the tire inflation pressure has dropped considerably in one or several tires.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics, as otherwise fault-free operation of the system is not ensured.



Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change. ◀

System limits



TPM cannot announce sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences. ◀

The system does not function properly if it has not been reset, e.g. a flat tire is reported despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot display a flat tire if a wheel has been mounted without TPM electronics, e.g. a compact wheel, or if TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Status display on Control Display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

TPM takes the fact that the tire pressure changes during driving into account. A correction is only required if requested by TPM with the color.

Green

The tire pressure matches the learned set state. "TPM active" is displayed on the Control Display.

A wheel is yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire. A message appears on the Control Display.

All wheels are yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in several tires. A message appears on the Control Display.

Gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire.

Reasons for this can be:

- ▷ TPM is being reset
- ▷ Temporary interference due to systems or devices which use the same radio frequency
- ▷ Malfunction

Resetting system

▶ Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change. ◀

Resetting finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, resetting is continued automatically. Do not reset the system when driving with a compact wheel*.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "TPM" and press the controller.



5. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
6. Select "Reset" and press the controller.

7. Select "Yes" and press the controller.



8. Start to drive.
The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After a few minutes of driving, the set tire inflation pressures in the tires are applied as the set values to be monitored. Resetting finishes during driving. The tires are shown in gray on the Control Display and "Status: TPM active" is displayed again.

▶ If a flat tire is detected during resetting and applying the tire inflation pressures, all tires are shown in yellow on the Control Display. The message "Tire low!" is displayed. ◀

Message with low tire inflation pressure



The warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether your vehicle is equipped with standard tires or run-flat tires.



You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to page 201. ◀

Standard tires

1. If all four wheels are shown in yellow, identify the damaged tire on the vehicle.
2. Replace the damaged wheel or wheels, refer to Changing wheels on page 215.

In contrast to a compact wheel, a spare wheel is equipped with the necessary TPM electronics and also monitored after mounting and after resetting the system.

Have the tire replaced by a BMW center or a workshop informed on handling TPM which works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Run-flat tires*

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.



If the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires, refer to page 201, do not continue driving. Continuing to drive with a flat tire could cause severe accidents. ◀

2. In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guide values:

- ▷ With a light load:
1 to 2 persons without luggage:
approx. 155 miles/250 km
- ▷ With a medium load:
2 persons, luggage compartment or cargo area full, or 4 persons without luggage:
approx. 95 miles/150 km
- ▷ With a full load:
from 4 persons, luggage compartment or cargo area full:
approx. 30 miles/50 km



Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.

If unusual vibrations or loud noises occur while

the vehicle is being driven, this can indicate final failure of the damaged tire. Reduce speed and stop at a suitable location as soon as possible, otherwise pieces of the tire could become detached and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, but instead contact your BMW center. ◀

Malfunction



The yellow warning light flashes and then lights up continuously. The tires are shown in gray on the Control Display and a message is displayed. No flat tire can be detected.

A message like this is displayed in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of a malfunction; have the system checked.
- ▷ If a wheels is mounted without TPM electronics
- ▷ If TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Active steering*

The concept

The active steering is a system that actively varies the steering angle of the front wheels in relation to the steering wheel movements.

When you are driving in the low road speed range, e.g. in a town or when parking, the steering angle increases, i.e. the steering becomes very direct. In the higher speed range, on the other hand, the steering angle is reduced more and more. This improves the handling capability of your BMW over the entire speed range.

In critical situations, the system can make targeted corrections to the steering angle provided by the driver and thus stabilize the vehicle before the driver intervenes. This stabilizing intervention is simultaneously deactivated when DSC is switched off, refer to page 87.

Malfunction



The warning lamp lights up yellow and a message is shown on the Control Display. The active steering is no longer operational. At low speeds, greater steering wheel movements are required, whereas at higher speeds, the vehicle reacts more sensitively to steering wheel movements. The stability-promoting intervention can also be deactivated. Proceed cautiously and drive defensively. Have the system checked.

Brake force display



Left-hand picture: normal braking.

Right-hand picture: heavy braking.


Airbags



The following airbags are located under the marked covers:


- 1 Front airbags
- 2 Head airbags
- 3 Side airbags in front and rear

Protective action

 To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 45. ◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the head and side airbags help provide protection in the event of side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the side upper body area. The head air bag supports the head.

The airbags are deliberately not triggered in every impact situation, e.g. less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

 Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way. Do not attempt to remove the airbag retention system from the vehicle. Do not modify or tamper with either the wiring or the individual components in the airbag system. This category includes the upholstery in the center of the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, the doors and the roof pillars along with the sides of the headliner. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel. Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns. In the event of malfunctions, deactivation, or triggering of the airbag restraint system, have the testing, repair, removal, and disposal of airbag generators executed only by a BMW center

or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel and has the required explosives licenses. Unprofessional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired airbag activation, either of which could result in personal injury. ◀

Warnings and information on the airbags is also provided on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags

The occupation of the seat is detected by evaluating the impression on the occupied seat surface of the front passenger seat. The front and side airbag on the front passenger side are activated or deactivated accordingly by the system.

▶ The current status of the front passenger airbag, i.e. deactivated or activated, is indicated by the indicator lamp over the interior rearview mirror, refer to Operating state of front passenger airbags in the following. ◀

⚠ Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, observe the safety information and handling instructions under Transporting children safely refer to page 54. The front and side airbag on the front passenger side can be deactivated for teenagers and adults in certain seat positions; then the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. In these cases, change the seat position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired status cannot be produced by changing the seat position, transport the corresponding person on the rear seat. Do not fit seat covers, seat cushion padding, ball mats or other items onto the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW. Do not lay objects under the seat which could press against the seat from below. Otherwise a correct evaluation of the occupied seat surface cannot be ensured. ◀

Operating state of front passenger airbags



Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating status of the front and side airbag on the front passenger side depending on the seat occupation. The indicator lamp shows whether the front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

- ▶ The indicator lamp lights up when a child in a child restraint system intended for the purpose is properly detected on the seat. The front and side airbag on the front passenger side are not activated.
- ▶ The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a correctly seated person of sufficient height is detected on the seat. The front and side airbag on the front passenger side are activated.
- ▶ The indicator lamp does not light up when the seat is empty. However, the front and side airbag on the front passenger side are not activated.

Operational readiness of airbag system



From radio readiness, refer to page 58, the warning lamp lights up briefly, indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the safety belt tensioners.

Airbag system malfunction

- ▷ Warning lamp does not light up from radio readiness.
- ▷ Warning lamp lights up continuously.

⚠ Have the airbag system checked immediately in case of a malfunction, otherwise there is a danger that the airbag system may not respond in the expected manner in an accident despite an impact of corresponding intensity. ◀

Head-Up Display*

The concept

With the Head-Up Display important information is projected into the driver's field of view, e.g. navigation instructions. This enables you to take in this information without looking away from the road.



Switching on/off

With the engine running or the ignition switched on:

Press the button to activate or deactivate the Head-Up Display.

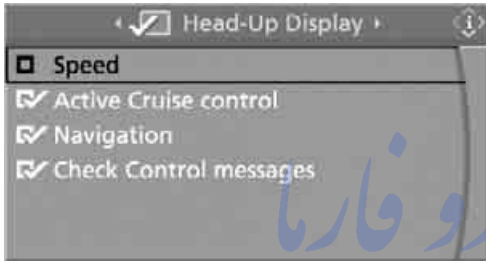


- 1 Navigation instructions
- 2 Display
 - ▷ Cruise control
 - ▷ Active cruise control
- 3 Speed

Selecting displays

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Head-Up Display" and press the controller.
5. Select desired information of Head-Up Display.



6. Press the controller.
 The information is shown on the Head-Up Display.

The settings are stored for the remote key currently in use.

Setting brightness

The brightness of the display is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the base setting. With the low beams switched on, the brightness can also be adjusted with the knurled wheel of the instrument lighting.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "Brightness" and press the controller.



5. Move the controller to the left to select "Head-Up Display".
6. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

The visibility of the displays in the Head-Up Display is influenced by:

- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters
- ▷ Certain seating positions
- ▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-Up Display
- ▷ Wet road surface and unfavorable lighting conditions

If the image is distorted, please have the basic setting checked at a BMW center.


Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system. The shape of the windshield complies with the requirements of the Head-Up Display to enable a precise display. A film in the windshield prevents the double images from being displayed. Windshield replacement should be carried out by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Care instructions

You can find everything you need to know on this topic by consulting the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure.



 Only clean the cover of the Head-Up Display with a soft, lint-free cloth or with a display cleaning cloth, otherwise damage may result. ◀

BMW Night Vision*

The concept

BMW Night Vision is a driver assistance system that is designed to provide enhanced vision for certain objects at night. This can be especially helpful for detecting people and larger animals. When objects are detected, the driver may be able to take appropriate action sooner. For example, the driver may identify and detect the presence of persons or animals in the road ahead or off to the sides and can be more alert, slow down or stop, blow the horn etc. The driver can decide which actions are appropriate and then react accordingly.

A certain area in front of the vehicle is viewed by an infrared camera and a generated image is shown on the Control Display. The resulting thermal image shows the relative heat radiation of the objects present in the camera's field of view. Warmer objects appear brighter and cooler objects appear darker. Contrast is dependent on the temperature difference between the objects and the background and on the amount of heat radiation of the object itself. As a result, it is quite possible that a person is not continually recognizable as a person in shape, since the thermal radiation can be affected by different clothing which blocks heat loss. Objects with little temperature difference to the surrounding area, or little heat radiation are less noticeable, for example in cold weather.

Any improvement in detection depends on many factors such as the object size and temperature compared to the surroundings, or other nearby objects, the visual recognition skills of the driver, weather conditions, and other factors.

Driving hints

With the system active, periodically but briefly, glance at the thermal image on the Control Display to notice objects that could be people or larger animals. The glance should be similar to glancing at the rear view mirror. Do not stare at the image for long periods while driving, as this will remove attention from the road. If you notice an object of interest ahead, be prepared to slow down or stop, blow the horn, or take other appropriate action.

System limits

The system is designed to supplement but not replace forward vision through the windshield. The driver is responsible for safe driving at night. BMW Night Vision is not designed to be used as a continuous viewing window for driving at night.




No system, no matter how sophisticated, can operate without limitations. BMW Night Vision operation is subject to physical and environmental limitations that will reduce the ability of the system to detect and display a clear thermal image. Some of the situations in which these limitations can occur are:

- ▷ on steep hilltops or depressions and in tight curves
- ▷ in tunnels, as the contrast is inherently low
- ▷ when the camera lens is dirty

- ▷ in dense fog, heavy rain or snowfall
- ▷ when displaying very hot objects such as transformers, car exhausts etc.
- ▷ when the image briefly freezes during normal system adjustment.

⚠ BMW Night Vision's potential benefits can be limited by the driving style of the driver, the size and relative temperature of the detected objects, dirt or contamination on the camera lens, adverse weather like snow, rain or fog, and other factors not mentioned here. It will always be the driver's responsibility to drive at a speed and in a manner that recognizes potential hazards and adjust accordingly. BMW Night Vision is not a substitute or replacement for driver responsibility or for accommodating the visibility conditions and the traffic situation. The forward view illuminated by the headlamps must always be the basis for making safe driving decisions, otherwise a safety risk will result. ◀

Activating BMW Night Vision

1. Turn the light switch to position **2** or **3**, refer to page 101.
2. With low beams switched on:
 - ▷ Press the  button. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the location of the button may differ somewhat.



- ▷ Press one of the programmable buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 53.


The image will be displayed on the Control Display after a few seconds. Depending on the last mode selected, either the normal or full screen image will be displayed.



Due to the system's need to adjust periodically, a still image is displayed at certain intervals for fractions of a second. This is normal and not an indication of a problem.

To prevent driving without headlamps, at a speed of more than approx. 3 mph/5 km/h and when dark, the thermal image on the Control Display is only shown when the low beams are on.

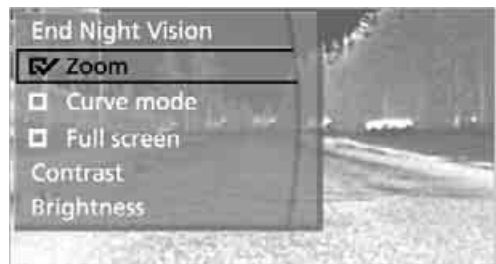
Deactivating BMW Night Vision

- ▷ Press the  button.
- ▷ Press the button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Press the **MENU** button.
- ▷ Via iDrive", refer to Selecting settings.

Selecting settings

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Activate BMW Night Vision.
2. Press the controller to display the menu items.



3. Select the menu item and press the controller:

- ▷ "End Night Vision":
Deactivate BMW Night Vision.
- ▷ "Zoom":
At higher speeds, the image is zoomed in.
- ▷ "Curve mode":
Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the image sections follows the course of the road to some degree.
- ▷ "Full screen":
The image is shown on the entire Control Display.
- ▷ "Contrast":
The contrast of the screen can be adjusted.
- ▷ "Brightness":
The brightness of the screen can be adjusted.

▷ "Curve mode" can only be activated with the "Zoom" function switched on. With "Full screen" activated, "Curve mode" and "Zoom" cannot be selected.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

To exit the menu:

The image will automatically disappear after approx. 5 seconds.

Cleaning camera



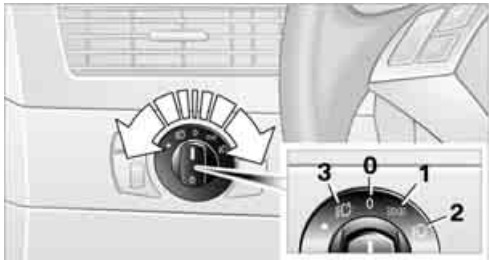
The function of the camera may be affected by heavy rain and fog, dirt, snow or ice on the lens. When this occurs, the displayed image on the Control Display may become gray.

To minimize icing, the camera lens is automatically heated. However, it may be necessary to clean the camera lens manually under severe weather conditions. When doing so, cautiously remove any debris, ice or snow. To avoid damage to the lens, do not use sharp or abrasive instruments to clean ice, snow, or dirt off the lens.

When the windshield is cleaned with the headlamps on, the camera lens area is automatically sprayed as well. Refer to page 65.

Lamps


Parking lamps/low beams



- 0 Lights off and daytime running lamps*
- 1 Parking lamps and daytime running lamps*
- 2 Low beams
- 3 Automatic headlamp control*, daytime running lamps*, Adaptive Head Light* and high-beam assistant*

Parking lamps

In switch position **1**, the front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on. You can use the parking lamps for parking. For lighting on one side for parking as an additional feature, refer to page [102](#).

 The parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, as otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine. ◀

Low beams


The low beams light up in switch position **2** only with the engine running. Otherwise the parking lamps are lit.

Automatic headlamp control*


In the switch position **3**, the system activates the low beams and switches them on or off in response to changes in ambient light conditions, for instance, in a tunnel, at dawn and dusk and in case of precipitation. Adaptive Head Light* is active. The LED next to the symbol is illuminated when the low beams are on.

When driving into a tunnel with bright overhead lighting, switching on of the lights may be delayed.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

 The low beams remain switched on independent of the ambient lighting conditions when you switch on the fog lamps*. ◀

If desired, the light switch can be left in the position **3**. The exterior lighting is automatically switched off after switching off the vehicle.

 The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions. For example, the sensors cannot detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the lamps manually under these conditions. ◀

Pathway lighting

When you activate the headlamp flasher after parking the vehicle and switching off the lamps, the low beams will come on for a brief period. You can set the duration or deactivate the function via iDrive.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page [16](#).

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.

- Select "Lighting" and press the controller.



- Select "Pathway lighting" and press the controller.
- Turn the controller to select the desired duration.
- Press the controller to apply the setting.

Daytime running lamps*

If desired, the light switch can remain in position **0**, **1** or **3**.

In position **0** and **3** the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after the vehicle is switched off. In position **1** the parking lamps light up after the ignition is switched off.

Switch on the parking lamps if required as described under Parking lamps.

Adaptive Head Light*

The concept

Adaptive Head Light is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

Activating Adaptive Head Light

In switch position **3**, the Adaptive Head Light is active and the automatic headlamp control is switched on, refer to page **101**.

To avoid dazzling oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Head Light is not active when driving in reverse and points toward the passenger side when the vehicle is stopped.

Malfunction

The LED next to the symbol for automatic headlamp control flashes. Adaptive Head Light is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

High beams/ roadside parking lamps




- High beams
- Headlamp flasher
- Roadside parking lamps

Roadside parking lamps, left or right*

You also enjoy the option of lighting up just one side of your vehicle when parking. When using this function, comply with national regulations:

Switching on

After parking the vehicle, press the lever in the desired direction **3**, past the resistance point.

 The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, as otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine. ◀

Switching off

Briefly press the lever in the opposite direction **3** up to the resistance point.

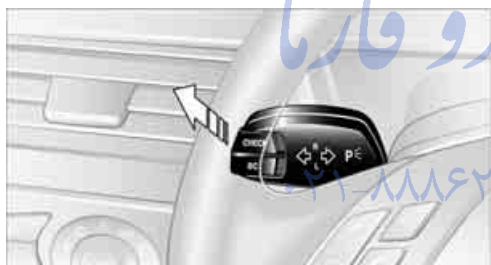
High-beam assistant*


The concept

This system automatically switches the high beams on and off again. A sensor on the front of the inside rearview mirror controls the process. The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on whenever the traffic situation allows. This reduces the strain on you while at the same time providing you with the best possible visibility. Of course, you can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off in the accustomed manner.

Activating high-beam assistant

1. Turn the light switch to switch position **3**, refer to page 101.
2. Press the turn signal lever in the high beam direction with the low beams switched on.



 The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the high-beam assistant is activated. The assistant automatically switches between high and low beams, whereby the system reacts to oncoming traffic and traffic ahead, as well as to sufficient lighting, e.g. towns/cities.

Manually switching between high and low beams


You can intervene at any time if you wish or the situation requires.

- ▷ If the high-beam assistant has switched on the high beams, however you nevertheless want to use the low beams, simply switch to the low beams with the turn signal lever. The high-beam assistant is deactivated in the process.

To reactivate the system, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high beam direction again.

- ▷ If the high-beam assistant has switched on the low beams, however you nevertheless want to use the high beams, switch to the high beams in the accustomed manner. The system is deactivated in the process and you must switch to the low beams manually. To reactivate the system, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high beam direction again.
- ▷ You use the headlamp flasher as usual with low beams.

System limits

 The high-beam assistant cannot replace personal decisions on the benefits of using the high beams. In situations which require this, you should therefore switch to the low beams manually to avoid a safety risk. ◀

In the following example situations, the system does not operate or only with limitations and a personal reaction may be required:


- ▷ Under extremely unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation
- ▷ For perceiving road users with poor lighting of their own, e.g. pedestrians, cyclists, people on horseback, horse-drawn vehicles, with train or ship traffic close to the road and wild animals crossing the road
- ▷ In tight curves, on steep crowns or depressions, with cross traffic or partially concealed oncoming traffic on the freeway
- ▷ In poorly lit places and with highly reflective signs
- ▷ In the low speed range
- ▷ When the windshield is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, vignettes etc. in the area of the inside rearview mirror
- ▷ When the sensor is dirty. Clean the sensor on the front side of the inside rearview mirror with a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner

Fog lamps*

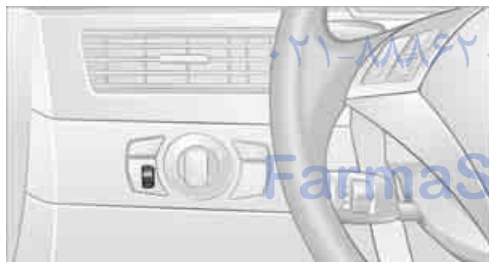


The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on for the fog lamps to operate. The green indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up whenever the fog lamps are on.

The fog lamps are switched off whenever the high beams are switched on.

 If the automatic headlamp control is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the fog lamps. ◀

Instrument lighting




You can control the lighting intensity by using the knurled wheel.

Interior lamps

The interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting and courtesy lamps* are controlled automatically.

With the courtesy lamps, LED lights are located in the door handles to illuminate the exterior area before the doors.

 To protect the battery, all lamps in the vehicle are switched off approx. 15 minutes after radio readiness is switched off, refer to Start/Stop button on page 58. ◀

Switching interior lamps on and off manually



Press the button.

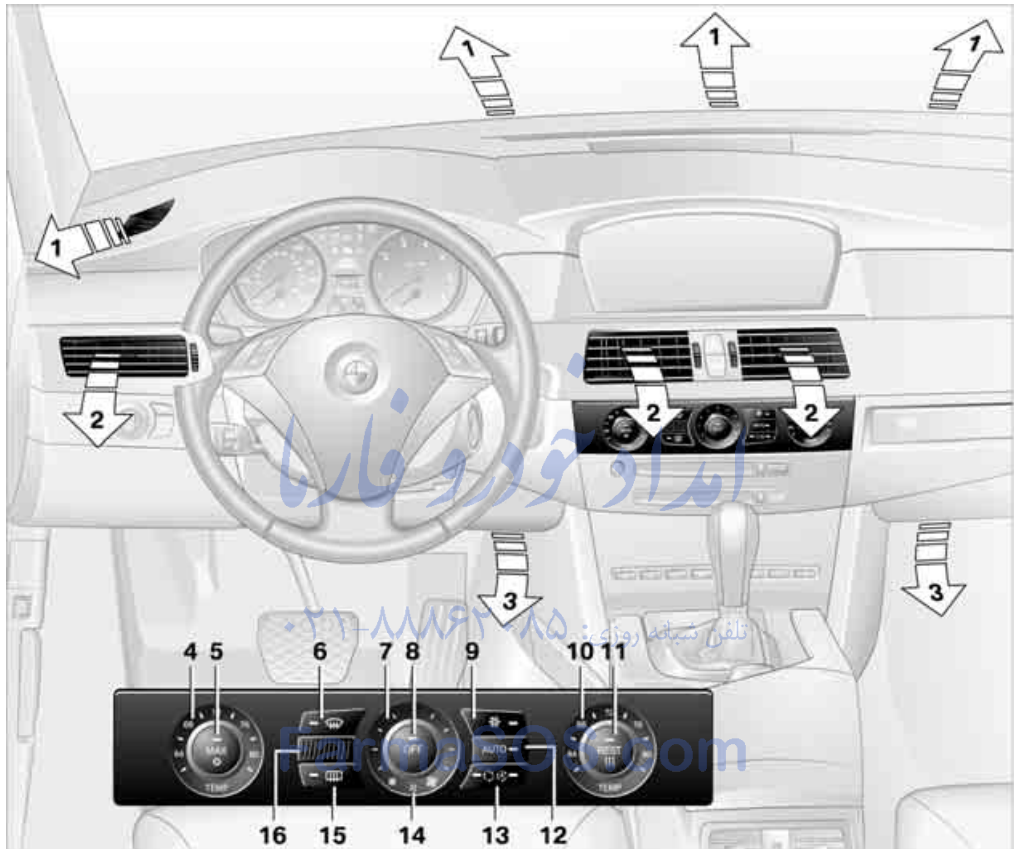
If you want the interior lamps to remain off continuously, maintain pressure on the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Reading lamps



Reading lamps are located in the front and rear adjacent to the interior lamps. Press the button briefly to switch the lamps on and off.

Automatic climate control



- 1 Airflow directed toward the windshield and side windows
- 2 Air for the upper body region, refer to Front ventilation on page 108
- 3 Air to footwell
- 4 Temperature, left side of passenger compartment
- 5 Maximum cooling
- 6 Defrosting windows and removing condensation
- 7 Air volume, manual
- 8 Switching off automatic climate control
- 9 Switching cooling function on and off manually
- 10 Temperature, right side of passenger compartment
- 11 Residual heat mode
- 12 AUTO program
- 13 AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode
- 14 LED for parked car ventilation*
- 15 Rear window defroster
- 16 Air grill for interior temperature sensor – please keep clear and unobstructed

The current setting for air distribution is displayed on the Control Display.


A congenial climate

The AUTO program offers the optimum air distribution and air volume for virtually all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. Now you only need to select an interior temperature pleasant to you.

The following sections contain more detailed information on the available setting options.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, also refer to Personal Profile settings on page 29.

AUTO program

 The AUTO program handles the adjustment of air distribution to the windshield and side windows, in the direction of the upper body, and in the footwell, as well as the air volume. It also adapts your instructions for the temperature to outside influences throughout the year.

The cooling is switched on automatically with the AUTO program. At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program in such a way that window condensation is prevented as much as possible.

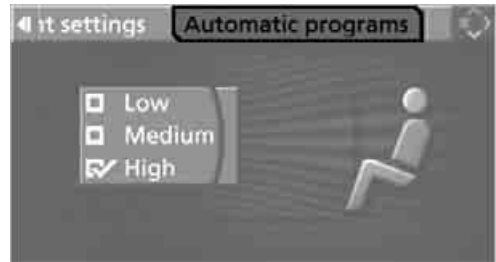
Intensity of AUTO program

To meet your individual needs, you can weaken or strengthen the intensity of the automatic climate control.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".

3. Select "Automatic programs" and press the controller.



4. Select the desired intensity and press the controller.


The marked intensity of the automatic program is switched on.

Temperature



Set the desired temperature individually on the driver's and front passenger side.

The automatic climate control adjusts this temperature as quickly as possible at any time of year, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

 When switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession, the automatic climate control does not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature. ◀

Adjusting temperature in upper body region

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Climate".
3. Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.

- Select the field by moving the controller and turning the controller to adjust the temperature.



Defrosting windows and removing condensation



Quickly remove ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.

Rear window defroster



The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a while.

Air volume, manual



You can adjust the air volume by turning. You can reactivate the automatic mode for the air volume with the AUTO button.

Manual air distribution

You can specify the air distribution.

- Open the start menu.
- Open "Climate".
- Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.

The driver's and front passenger side can be adjusted separately with the fields on the right or left side.
- Select the driver's or front passenger side if necessary.

Move the controller to the right or left repeatedly until the driver's or front passenger side is selected.
- Select the desired field by moving the controller.

- Turn the controller to adjust the air distribution.



Driver's side:

- Airflow directed toward the windshield and side windows
- Airflow for the upper body
- Air to footwell

Front passenger side:

- Airflow for the upper body
- Air to footwell

Pressing the AUTO button cancels the air distribution settings on the Control Display and vice versa. ◀

Switching cooling function on and off



The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before also reheating it as

required, according to the temperature setting. Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program. The passenger compartment can only be cooled with the engine running.

Maximum cooling



Maximally cooled air is obtained as quickly as possible from an outside temperature above 32 °F / 0 °C and with the engine running.

The automatic climate control changes over to the lowest temperature and switches into the recirculated-air mode. The maximum air quantity only flows out of the vents for the upper

body. Therefore, open these vents for maximum cooling.

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode



You can respond to pollutants or unpleasant odors in the immediate environment by suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle. During AUC operation, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

By pressing the button repeatedly, you can request three operating modes:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Right LED on, AUC mode: the system detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off the supply as needed.
- ▷ Left LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off.

⚠ If condensation starts to form on the inside window surfaces during operation in the recirculated-air mode, you should switch it off while also increasing the air volume as required.

The recirculated-air mode should not be used over an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates continuously. ◀

Residual heat



The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the passenger compartment, e.g. while stopped at a school to pick up a child.

The function can be switched on when the following conditions are met:

- ▷ up to 15 minutes after switching off the engine
- ▷ with engine at operating temperature
- ▷ with sufficient battery voltage
- ▷ at an outside temperature below 77 °F / 25 °C

The LED lights up when the function is switched on.

From radio readiness the interior temperature, the air volume and the air distribution can be set.

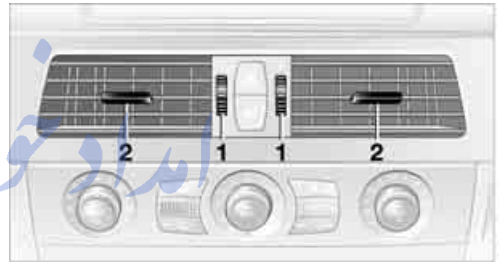
Switching off automatic climate control



The air volume, the heater and the cooling function are all switched off.

You can restart the automatic climate control by pressing any of its buttons except the REST button.

Front ventilation



1 Knurled wheels to smoothly open and close air vents تلفن شبانه

2 Levers to change the air vent direction

⚠ Do not drop any foreign objects into the vent outlets, otherwise these could be catapulted outwards and lead to injuries. ◀

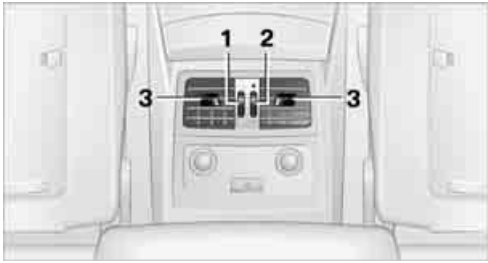
Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vent outlets to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance, if the interior has become too warm, etc.

Draft-free ventilation

Set the vent outlets so that the air flows past you and is not directed straight at you.

Rear ventilation



- 1 Knurled wheel to smoothly open and close air vents
- 2 Knurled wheel to adjust the temperature:
 - ▷ Turn toward blue: colder
 - ▷ Turn toward red: warmer
- 3 Levers to change the air vent direction

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your BMW center replaces this combined filter as a standard part of your scheduled maintenance. You can select a display of more detailed information on the Control Display, refer to page 77.

Parked car ventilation*

The concept

The parked car ventilation blows air into the passenger compartment to lower interior temperatures.

It is ready to use in the parked-car mode at any outside temperature.

You can set two different times for the system to start. The parked car ventilation can also be switched on and off directly. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

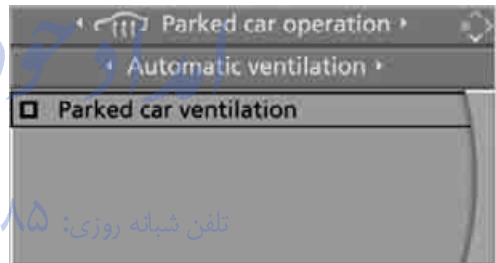
Since the system uses a substantial amount of electrical current, you should refrain from activating it twice in succession without allowing the battery to be recharged in normal operation between use.


The air emerges through the upper body region vent outlets in the instrument panel. These vent outlets must be open for the system to operate. The parked car ventilation is operated via iDrive.

Switching on and off directly

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Automatic ventilation" and press the controller.
5. Select "Parked car ventilation" and press the controller.



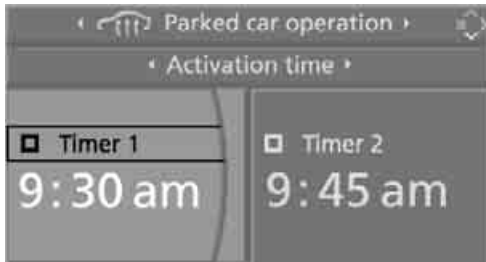
- The parked-car ventilation is switched on.
-  The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes.

Preselecting activation times

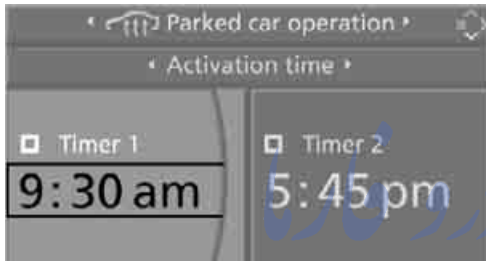
iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Activation time" and press the controller.

5. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2".



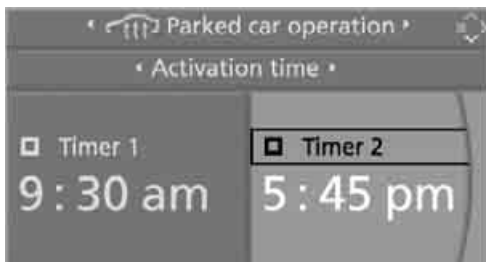
6. Select the time and press the controller. The first time setting is highlighted.



7. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
 8. Press the controller to apply the setting. The next setting is highlighted.
 9. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the time is stored.

Activating activation time

Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2" and press the controller.



- The activation time is activated.
 ☞ The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control lights up.

☞ The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes when the parked car ventilation has switched on.

The parked car ventilation is only available for activation within the next 24 hours. Then it must be activated again. ◀

Practical interior accessories


Integrated universal remote control*

The concept


The integrated universal remote control can replace as many as three hand-held transmitters for various remote-controlled accessories, such as door openers and house alarm systems. The integrated universal remote control registers and stores signals from the original hand-held transmitters.


The signal of an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons **1**. Then with the ignition switched on, this programmed memory button **1** can be used to operate the respective feature. The LED **2** flashes to confirm transmission of the signal.

Should you sell your vehicle one day, be sure to delete the stored programs beforehand for your safety, refer to page **112**.

 To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the travel range of the device. Also, comply with the safety precautions of the original hand-held transmitter. ◀

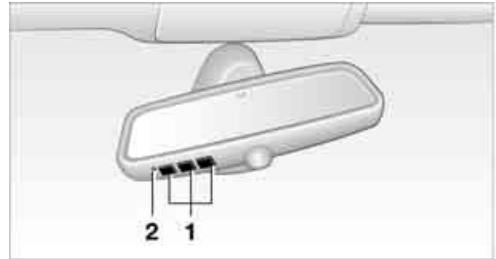
Checking compatibility

 If you see this symbol on the packaging or in the manual supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, it is safe to assume that it is compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

 If you have additional questions, please contact your BMW center or call: 1-800-355-3515. Information is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmwusa.com or www.homelink.com.


HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc. ◀

Programming



- 1 Memory buttons
- 2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on ignition, refer to page **58**.
2. When starting operation for the first time: Press both outer memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes. All stored programs are deleted.
3. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 2 in/5 cm to 8 in/20 cm from the memory buttons **1**.
 The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the relevant system of the original hand-held transmitter used. ◀
4. Simultaneously press the transmit key on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control. The LED **2** flashes slowly at first. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance.
5. To program other original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

You can operate the system when the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on.

▶ If the device can not be used after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To do so, either read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or hold down the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly for a short time and then remains lit for approx. 2 seconds, this indicates that the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. In the case of an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described at Alternating-code transmitters. ◀

Alternating-code transmitters

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the equipment to be set. You will find information there on the possibilities for synchronization.

When programming hand-held transmitters that employ an alternating code, please observe the following supplementary instructions:

▶ Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person. ◀

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled device.
2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in the section Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g. on the drive unit.
4. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. After step 4, you have approx. 30 seconds for step 5.
5. Press the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control three times.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

▶ If you have any additional questions, please contact your BMW center. ◀

Deleting stored programs

Press both outer memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes:
All stored programs are deleted.
Individual programs cannot be deleted.

Sun blinds*

Sun blind for rear window



Press the button on the driver's door.

Sun blinds for rear side windows


Pull the loop of the roller sun blind and hook onto bracket.

Glove compartment

Opening



Pull the handle. The light in the glove compartment switches on.


 To prevent injury in the event of an accident while the vehicle is being driven, close the glove compartment immediately after use. ◀

Closing

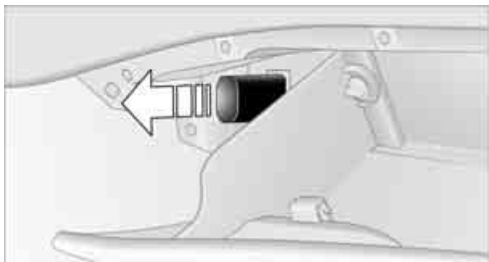
Fold the cover up.

Locking


Lock with a key.

 If you only hand over the remote control without the integrated key, e.g. for valet parking, refer to page 28, the glove compartment cannot be unlocked. ◀

Rechargeable flashlight



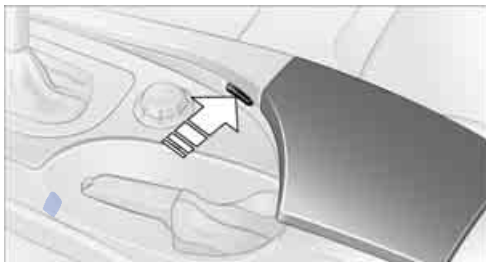
The flashlight is located on the left side of the glove compartment.
The flashlight can remain plugged in continuously. Pull the flashlight out of the socket when needed.

 To avoid possibly damaging the lamp, always ensure that it is switched off before inserting it in the socket. ◀

Front center armrest

The compartment in the center armrest is divided into two sections.

Opening cover



Press the button. The cover opens somewhat and can be folded upwards.

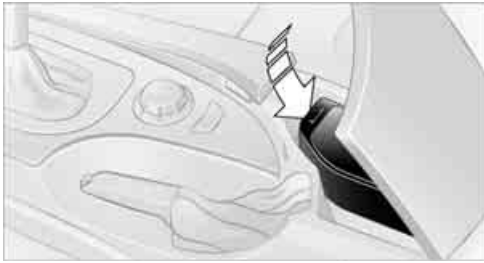
Depending on vehicle equipment, the upper section contains a compartment with a mat that can be removed for cleaning or a telephone cradle*.

Opening upper compartment



Press button and fold cover upward.


Accessing lower compartment



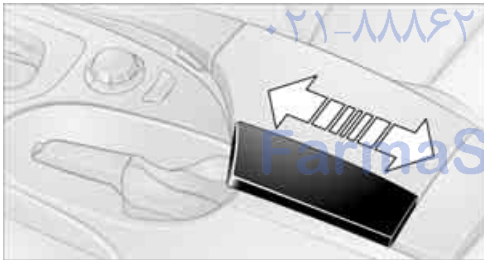
Press the button at the front and fold the upper compartment or the telephone cradle upward.

Ventilating lower compartment

Push the slide in the lower compartment upward.

 Depending on the automatic climate control setting, the temperature inside the ventilated compartment may be higher than in the rest of the interior. Should this be the case, push the slide downward to close off the ventilation. ◀

Adjusting



Push the illustrated section of the center armrest into the desired position.


Connection for external audio device

You can connect an external audio device, e.g. a CD or an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle loudspeakers, refer to page 171.

Storage compartments


There are other storage compartments in the doors as well as in the front and rear center console.

Storage nets are located on the backrests of the front seats, and a net* is provided in the front passenger footwell.


 Do not stow hard or sharp-edged objects in the storage nets or the net, otherwise there is an increased risk of injury in an accident. ◀

Clothes hooks

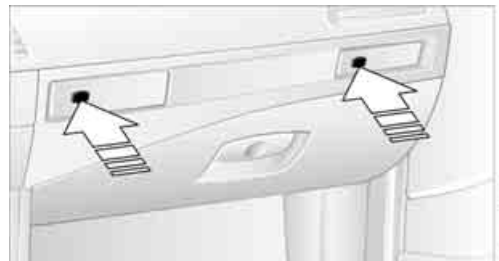
Clothes hooks are located near the grab handles in the rear.

 When hanging clothing on the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision. Do not hang heavy objects on the hooks. If you do so, they could cause personal injury to occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers. ◀

Cup holders

 Do not place containers made of glass in the cup holders. This would lead to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. ◀

Opening



Briefly press the button.

Closing

Press the cover in the center and push in the cup holder.

Ashtray, front

Opening

Slide back the cover.

Emptying



Push the ashtray toward the front: the ashtray lifts and can be removed.

Cigarette lighter, front



Press in the lighter with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

⚠ Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.

Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, use the lighter and burn themselves. ◀

Ashtray, rear



Emptying

Press the entire cover down. The ashtray rises and can be removed.

Cigarette lighter, rear



Refer to Cigarette lighter, front.

Connecting electrical devices

Sockets

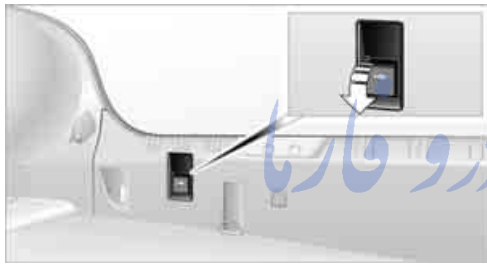
With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the cigarette lighter socket can be used as a power outlet for hand flashlights, car vacuum cleaners, etc., with power ratings of up to approx. 200 W at 12 V. Avoid damaging the socket due to inserting plugs of different shapes or sizes. The same is true for all power outlets in the vehicle.

In front passenger footwell



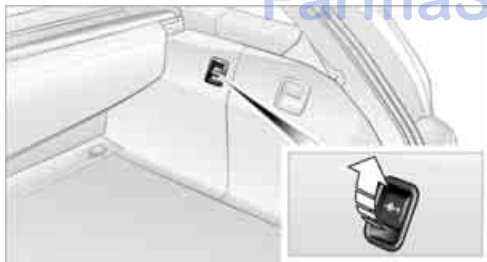
Access to socket:
Fold open the cover.

Sedan:
In luggage compartment



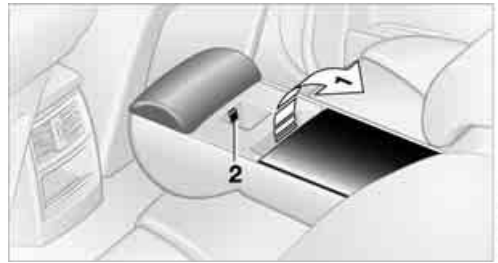
Access to socket:
Fold open the cover.

Sports Wagon:
In cargo area



Access to socket:
Fold open the cover.

Center armrest, rear



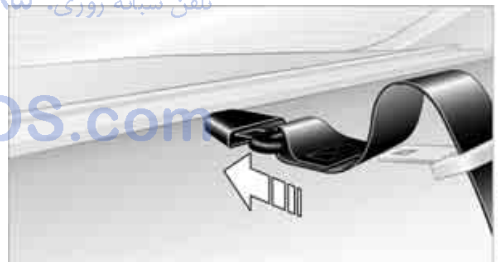
Storage tray:
Pull the cover upward, arrow 1.

Access to cup holders:
Press the button 2 and open the cover

Sedan:
Through-loading system*

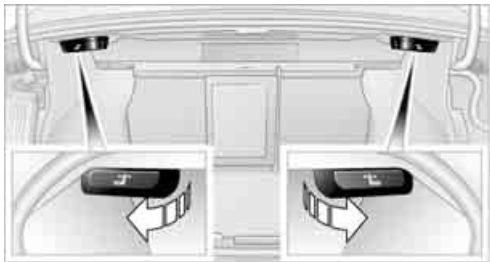
Opening

1. Open the buckle of the center safety belt in the rear and insert the latch plate at the end of the belt into the fixture on the rear window shelf.

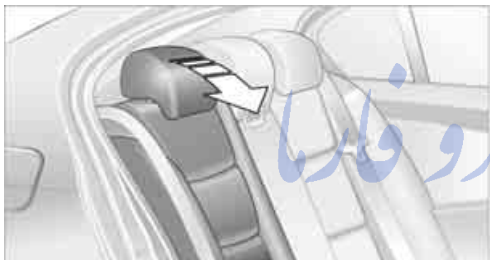


2. Push the corresponding head restraint down as far as it will go, refer to page 49.

- To unlock the rear seat back, pull the corresponding lever in the luggage compartment.



- The unlocked rear seat back moves forward slightly. Fold the seat back forward by the head restraint.



Closing

- Fold the rear seat back into the seating position and engage.

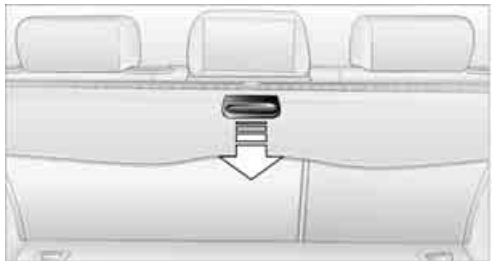
⚠ When you return the seat to its upright position, make sure that the retainer engages properly. If it is not properly engaged, transported cargo could enter the vehicle during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants. ◀

- Release the latch plate from the bracket on the rear window shelf and insert it into the buckle of the center safety belt. The latch plate must audibly engage.

The lashing eyes in the luggage compartment provide you with a way to attach luggage compartment nets* or flexible straps for securing suitcases and luggage, refer to page 128.

Sports Wagon: cargo area

Roll-up cover



Pull out the roll-up cover and hook it into the brackets.

⚠ Do not place heavy or hard objects on the roll-up cover. If you do so, they may already pose a danger to vehicle occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers. Do not allow the roll-up cover to snap back, as otherwise it can be damaged. ◀

Manual roll-up cover

When opening the tailgate or rear window, the roll-up cover is raised. Before closing the tailgate and rear window, press down the roll-up cover until it engages.

Automatic roll-up cover*

When the tailgate or rear window is opened, the roll-up cover is raised, and when the tailgate and rear window is closed, it is lowered.

⚠ Make sure that the closing area of the roll-up cover is clear of obstructions, as otherwise the payload or the roll-up cover may be damaged. ◀

Increasing cargo area

The rear seat back is divided. You can fold over both sides individually to increase the cargo area.

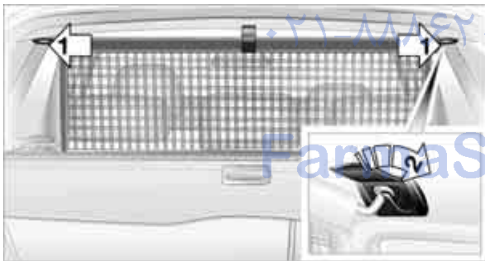


Reach into the recess and pull toward the front.

⚠ When you fold back the backrest, be sure that the catch engages securely. The red warning indicator disappears in the recess when the catch is engaged. If it is not properly engaged, transported cargo could enter the passenger compartment during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants. ◀

⚠ To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the safety belt information on page 45. ◀

Separation net



⚠ Do not allow the separation net to snap back, otherwise there is a risk of injury and the separation net may be damaged. ◀

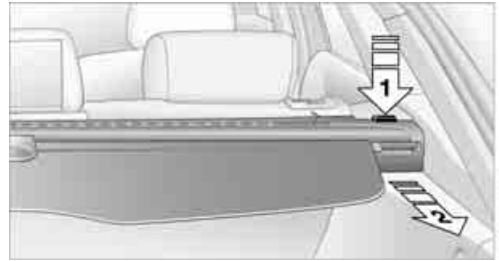
With normal cargo area

Pull the separation net out of the case by the loop. Grasp the rod on both sides and insert it in the brackets, arrow 1. This is best carried out from the rear seat.

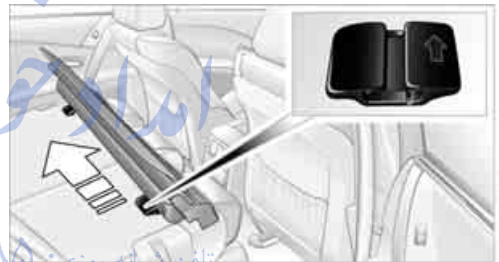
When you no longer required the separation net, grasp the rod on both sides and remove it from the brackets, arrow 2. Then slowly allow the separation net to glide into the case.

With larger cargo area

1. Fold over both rear backrests, refer to Increasing cargo area.
2. Unlock the case on both sides with the buttons, arrow 1.



3. Pull out the case downward, arrow 2; avoid tilting when doing so.

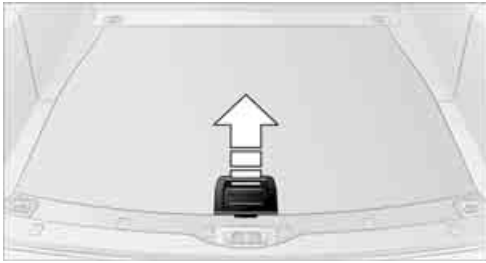


4. Push the case into the guides on the back of the seat backrests.
5. Carefully pull out the separation net and insert it in the front brackets as described in With normal cargo area. This is best carried out from the front seat.

To restore the original state, proceed in the reverse order. Finally, lay the case in the two side brackets and then press forward until it engages. The red warning indicator disappears in the recess when the catch is engaged. Check whether the case is properly locked in place by pulling it with a sudden movement.

Compartment in floor

Automatic roll-up cover: the opened floor panel strikes against the roll-up cover in the end position. If necessary, unhook the roll-up cover at the rear before opening the floor panel.



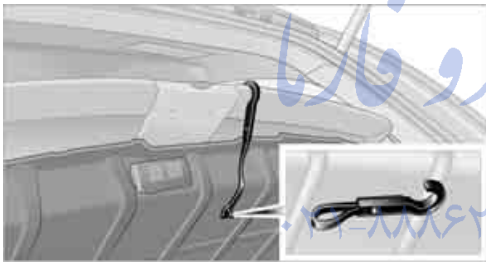
Opening: reach into the recess and swing up the handle.

The floor panel flap can be locked.

The partitions in the compartment can be rearranged.

Folding up spare tire cover

1. Swing up the cover.



2. Detach the hook from the bracket and hook into the floor panel flap.

Before swinging down, return the hook to its original position.

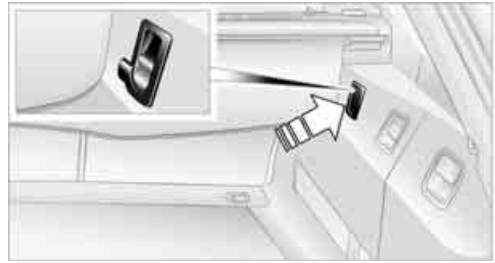
Storage area package*

Retaining straps

You can unhook the right-hand retaining strap, e.g. to open the side panel. To unhook at the rear end, pull downward; to hook in, press it into the opening. In addition, it can also be secured in the center. This makes it possible to secure objects of different sizes.

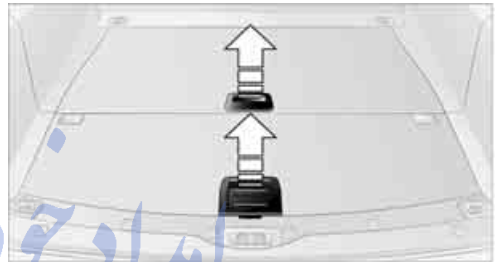
Hooks

Two hooks can be used to secure smaller objects.



Press at bottom and fold out until they lock.

Compartments in floor



Front compartment:

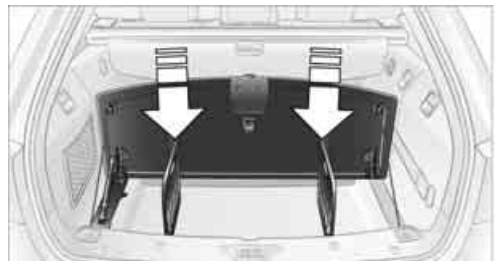
- ▷ To open the front floor panel flap, pull upward on the handle.
- ▷ To close the front floor panel flap, press downward until it locks.

Rear compartment:

To open, reach into the recess and swing up the handle.

The rear floor panel flap can be locked.

Dividing up rear compartment



Fold out the partitions and press down.



Use the separation net, refer to page 118, otherwise objects could be thrown

around and endanger occupants, e.g. during braking or evasive maneuvers. ◀

Ski bag*

Designed for safe, clean transport of up to 4 pairs of standard skis or up to 2 snowboards.

With the ski bag you can stow skis with a length of up to 6.9 ft/2.10 m. When skis of 6.9 ft/2.10 m in length are loaded, the ski bag will tend to contract, reducing its overall capacity.

Loading

1. Fold down the center armrest, press the button and open the cover.



2. Press the button again; the cover in the luggage compartment opens. If you press the button firmly the first time, this also opens the cover in the luggage compartment.
3. Extend the ski bag between the front seats and fill it. The zipper facilitates access to the stowed items and drying of the ski bag.
4. Insert the latch plate of the ski bag retaining strap into the center safety belt buckle that is marked CENTER.




Only stow clean skis in the ski bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

Securing cargo



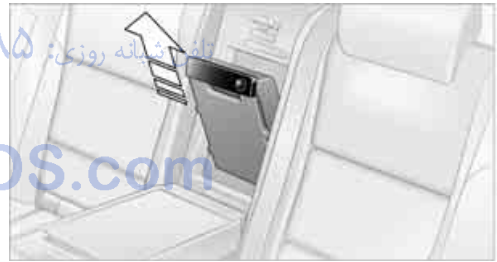
After loading, secure the ski bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

 Secure the ski bag in this way. If you fail to do so, it could endanger occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers. ◀


To store the ski bag, perform the above steps in reverse order.

Removing ski bag

The ski bag can be completely removed, e.g. for faster drying or to allow you to put it to other uses.



1. Pull the handle forward and pull the ski bag up and out.
2. Close the cover in the luggage compartment.

 Your BMW center will be glad to provide you with more detailed information on the various items of equipment. ◀

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Driving tips

This section is designed to provide you with extra support by supplying information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Things to remember when driving

Break-in period

Moving parts need breaking-in time to adjust to each other. To ensure that your vehicle continues to provide optimized economy of operation throughout an extended service life, we request that you devote careful attention to the following section.

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at changing engine and driving speeds, however do not exceed 4,500 rpm or 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kick-down mode during these initial miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission

Do not use the acceleration assistant during the break-in period, refer to page 63.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive reservedly during the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive in a reserved manner during this break-in period.

Clutch


The function of the clutch is only at its optimized level after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in instructions again if components mentioned above must be replaced after subsequent driving operation.

General driving notes


Closing luggage compartment lid/tailgate

 Operate the vehicle only when the luggage compartment lid/tailgate is completely closed. Otherwise, exhaust fumes could enter the interior of the vehicle. ◀

If special circumstances should make it absolutely necessary to operate the vehicle with the luggage compartment lid/tailgate open:

1. Close all windows and the glass sunroof or panorama glass sunroof.
2. Increase the air volume of the automatic climate control to a high level, refer to page 107.

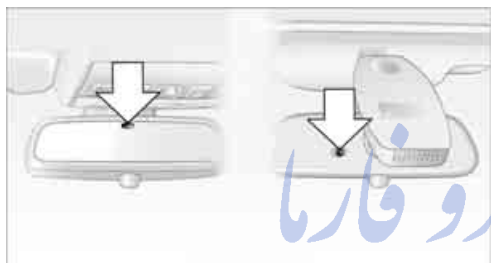
Hot exhaust system

 As in all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated on the exhaust system. Do not remove the heat shields installed adjacent to it, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious property damage as well as personal injury. ◀

Mobile communications devices in vehicle

! BMW discourages the use of mobile communications devices, e.g. mobile phones, inside the vehicle without a direct connection to an outside antenna. Otherwise, the vehicle electronics and mobile communication device can influence one another. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation which results from transmission will be dissipated from the vehicle interior. ◀

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature*



This feature is controlled by two photocells in the inside rearview mirror. One is integrated into the glass of the mirror, while the other is located at an offset position on the rear of the mirror housing.

For trouble-free operation, keep the photocells clean and do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and the windshield. Do not attach stickers of any kind to the windshield in front of the mirror, either.

Hydroplaning

! When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning, and is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle. ◀

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the tread depth of the tires decreases, refer also to Minimum tire tread on page 201.

Driving through water

! Do not drive through water on the road if it is deeper than 1 ft/30 cm, and then only at walking speed at the most. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged. ◀

Using handbrake on inclines

! On inclines, do not hold the vehicle with the clutch; use the handbrake. Otherwise greater clutch wear will result. ◀

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission

! Start off quickly on slopes. Do not hold the vehicle on a hill by pressing the accelerator, but apply the handbrake instead. Otherwise overheating can occur in the transmission region. ◀

Starting assistant

The starting assistant enables you to start off conveniently on slopes. The parking brake is not required for this purpose.


1. Hold the vehicle with the footbrake.
2. Release the footbrake and immediately drive off quickly.

! The starting assistant holds the vehicle for approx. 2 seconds after releasing the footbrake. Depending on the load, the vehicle may also roll back slightly during this time. After releasing the footbrake, immediately start quickly, otherwise the starting assistant no longer holds the vehicle after approx. 2 seconds and it begins to roll back. ◀

Braking safely

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. In situations that require it, it is best to brake with full force. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.


Pulsation of the brake pedal, combined with sounds from the hydraulic circuits, indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

 Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light but consistent pedal pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure. ◀


Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors to ensure that full braking efficiency will then be available when you need it.

Hills

 To prevent overheating and the resulting reduced efficiency of the brake system, drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Even light but consistent pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure. ◀

The braking effect of the engine can be further increased by downshifting, if necessary all the way down into first gear. This strategy helps you avoid placing excessive loads on the brake system. For information on downshifting in the manual mode of the automatic transmission, refer to page 64.

 Do not drive with the clutch depressed, in idle or with the engine switched off, otherwise there will be no engine braking action or support of the braking force and steering. Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area of movement of the pedals and impair their operation. ◀

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads

during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

When vehicle is parked

Condensation forms in the air conditioner system during operation, and then exits under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

Before driving into a car wash

To prevent the exterior mirrors on this vehicle from being damaged, always fold them in by hand before entering an automatic car wash.

General information on the care and maintenance of your BMW is contained in the Caring for your vehicle brochure.


Rear window wiper*

The rear window wiper can be damaged in car washes. Take appropriate protective measures; ask the car wash operator if necessary.

With comfort access and automatic transmission


Insert the remote control into the ignition lock. The engine can be switched off in the selector lever position N. Also refer to page 40.

Cargo loading

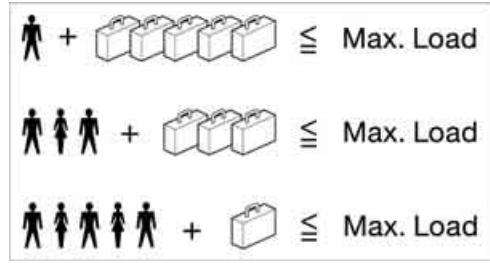
 To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. The ultimate result can assume the form of a sudden blow-out. ◀

Determining loading limit



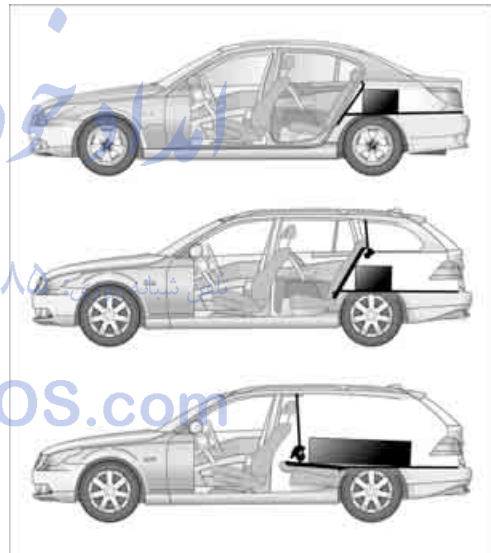
1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:
 The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX lbs. or YYY kg. Otherwise, this could damage the vehicle and produce unstable vehicle operating conditions. ◀
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX lbs. or YYY kg.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the XXX amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150-lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.:
1,400 lbs. minus 750 lbs. = 650 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The permissible load is the total of the weight of occupants and cargo/luggage. The greater the weight of occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

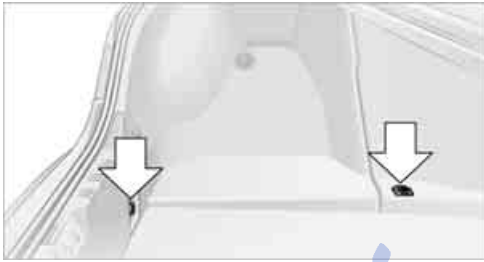
Stowing cargo



- ▶ Load heavy cargo as far forward and as low as possible, placing it directly behind the seat back.
- ▶ Cover sharp edges and corners.
- ▶ For very heavy cargo when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each safety belt in the opposite buckle.
- ▶ Do not pile objects higher than the top edge of the backrest.

- ▷ Sports Wagon:
Use the separation net to protect the occupants, refer to page 118. Make sure that objects cannot penetrate through the separation net.
Wrap sharp-edged or pointed objects which could strike the rear window while driving.

Securing cargo



- ▷ Use the luggage net*, luggage straps, or securing straps to hold down small and lightweight luggage and cargo.
- ▷ Heavy-duty cargo straps* for securing larger and heavier objects are available at your BMW center. Four lashing eyes mounted in the luggage compartment or cargo area are used to secure these heavy-duty cargo straps, refer to illustration.
- ▷ Please observe the special instructions supplied with the heavy-duty cargo straps.

⚠ Always position and secure the load as described above. If you do not, it can endanger the passengers during braking or evasive maneuvers.

Use only the lashing eyes to secure heavy-duty cargo straps, refer to illustration, otherwise the cargo straps could become detached or the vehicle could be damaged.

Never exceed either the approved gross vehicle weight or either of the approved axle loads, refer to page 229 ff., as excessive loads can pose a safety hazard, and may also place you in violation of traffic safety laws.

You should never transport heavy or hard objects unsecured in the passenger compartment, as they could fly around and pose a safety

hazard to the vehicle's occupants during abrupt braking or evasive maneuvers. ◀

Roof-mounted luggage rack*

A special rack system is available as an option for your BMW. Please comply with the precautions included with the installation instructions.

Mounting points



The mounting points are located in the door openings or on the roof rails*.

Loading roof-mounted luggage rack

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on its handling and steering response.

You should therefore always remember not to exceed the approved roof load capacity, the approved gross vehicle weight or the axle loads when loading the rack.

You can find the specified weights under Weights on page 229 ff.

The load on the roof must be evenly distributed and must not extend outward beyond the limits of the loading surface. Always stow the heaviest pieces at the bottom. Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for raising the glass sunroof, and that objects do not project into the opening path of the luggage compartment lid/ tailgate.

Secure roof-mounted cargo correctly and securely to prevent it from shifting or falling off during the trip.

Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Navigation

This chapter describes how you can enter destinations and specify your route so that your navigation system guides you reliably to your destination.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Starting navigation system*

Your navigation system can use satellites to ascertain the precise position of your vehicle and guide you reliably to any destination you enter.

Navigation DVD


The navigation system requires a special navigation DVD. The latest version is available at your BMW center.

Inserting navigation DVD



1. Insert the navigation DVD with the labeled side up. The DVD is automatically pulled in.
2. Allow several seconds for the system to scan the data from the DVD.

Removing navigation DVD

1. Press  button 1.
The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

If the DVD is not ejected from the drive, it is possible that it is blocked. A message appears on the Control Display.

Display in assistance window

You can display the route or the current position in the assistance window. This display remains visible even if you change to another application.

1. Move the controller to the right to enter the assistance window.



2. Press the controller.
Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select the desired route view or "Current position".



4. Press the controller.


Destination entry

In entering your destination you can select from among the following options:

- ▷ Entering a destination manually, see below
- ▷ Entering destination via voice*, refer to page 136
- ▷ Selecting destination using information, refer to page 138
- ▷ Selecting destination from a list, refer to Destination list, page 139
- ▷ Selecting destination from address book, refer to page 140
- ▷ Selecting home address, refer to page 142

After selecting your destination you can proceed to start the destination guidance, refer to page 144.

Operating navigation system

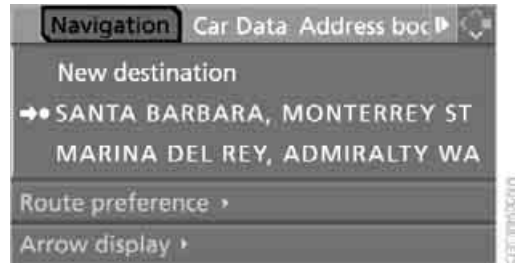
 Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. If you do not observe this precaution, you may be in violation of the law, and can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users. ◀

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".



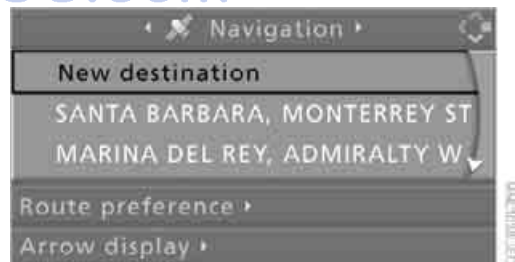
3. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.



Entering a destination manually

The system's word matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns, refer to page 143. This allows you to enter different spellings and completes your entry automatically so that stored names can be called up quickly.

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller. "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.



3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.



The system also supports you with the following features:

- ▷ If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town or city.
- ▷ You can skip the entry of country and locality if the current entries should be retained for your new destination.

Selecting country

1. Select "State / Province" or the displayed country and press the controller.



The list of available countries appears on the display.

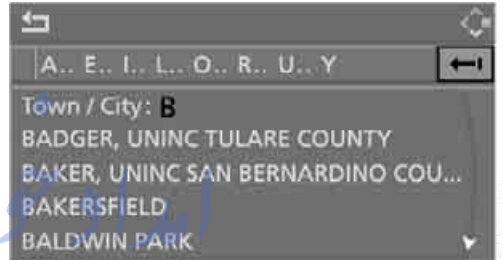


2. Select the country of destination and press the controller.

In order to be able to start the destination guidance, at least the town/city of the destination or its zip code must be entered.

Entering destination via town/city name

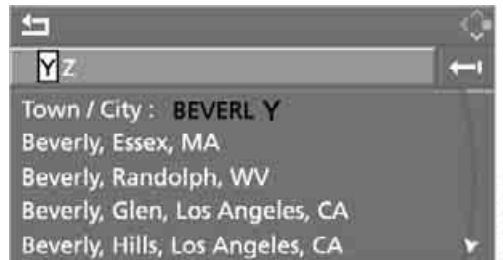
1. Select "Town / City" or the displayed town/city and press the controller.
2. Select the starting letter and press controller.
A list of all towns/cities starting with this letter appears on the Control Display.
3. To delete the letter entered if necessary:



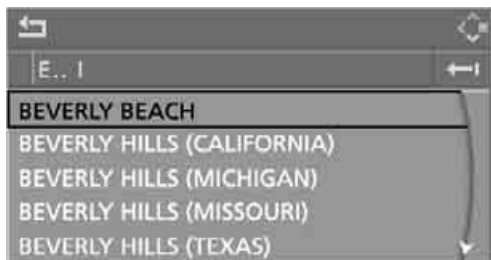
- ▷ Delete individual numbers or letters: Move the controller toward the right to select and press the controller.
- ▷ Delete all numbers or letters: Move the controller toward the right to select and hold the controller down.

4. If necessary, input more letters.
The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.

- ▷ Enter blank space if necessary: Select the _ symbol and press the controller.

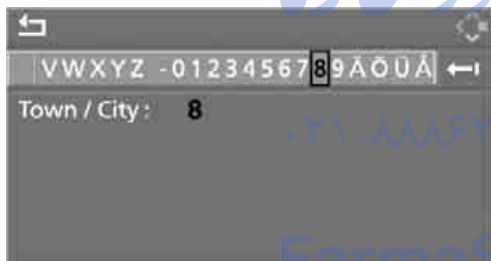


- Change to the third field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until the town or city name is selected from the list and press the controller.



Entering destination by zip code

- Select "Town / City" and press the controller.
- Enter the zip code: Select the desired digits and press the controller.



- ▷ Enter a blank space: Select the _ symbol and press the controller.
 - ▷ Delete individual numbers or letters: Move the controller toward the right to select ← and press the controller.
 - ▷ Delete all numbers or letters: Move the controller toward the right to select ← and hold the controller down.
- Select the zip code and press the controller. The corresponding destination is displayed.
 - Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering street, house number and intersection

After the street you can also enter the intersection or the house number.

Entering street and intersection

- Select "Street" or the displayed street and press the controller.
- Enter the street. The street is entered exactly like the destination.




The intersection is entered in the same way as the street.

Entering a street without entering destination

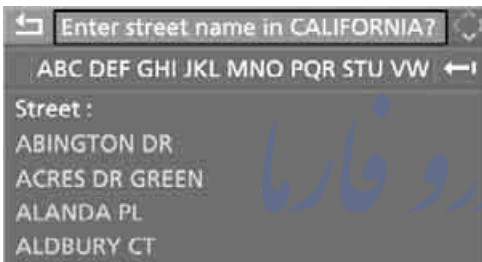
You can also enter a street without entering a destination. In this case all streets of the entered country are offered for selection. The related town/city is displayed after the street name.

If a town/city has already been entered, you can undo this entry. This may be practical if the desired street does not exist in the entered destination, because, for example, it belongs to another part of the town/city.

1. Change to upper field.
 The arrow is selected.



2. Turn the controller to the right until the request for the entry of a street in the country appears and press the controller.



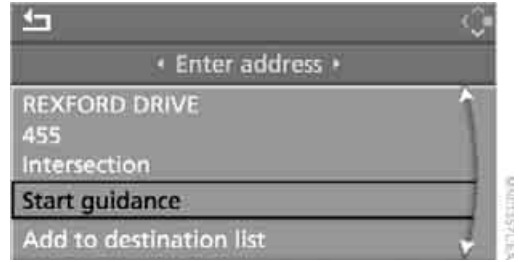
3. Change to the second field from the top and enter the street.

Entering house number

All house numbers stored for the street on the navigation DVD can be entered.

1. Select "House number" and press the controller.
2. Enter the house number:
 Select the desired digits and press the controller.
3. Change into the third field from the top.
 Turn the controller until the house number is selected and press the controller.


Starting destination guidance with manual destination entry




- ▶ Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.
 Destination guidance starts immediately.
- ▶ If the destination guidance does not need to be started immediately:
 Select "Add to destination list" and press the controller.
 The destination is saved in the destination list, refer to page 139.

Entering destination via voice*

In conjunction with the Professional navigation system, you can enter the desired destination via the voice input system. When entering the destination, it is possible to change between speech input and iDrive at any time. Reactivate the speech input function for this purpose if necessary.

 With ›Options‹ you can have the possible commands read aloud. ◀

1. Press the  button on the steering wheel or in the center console.

 2. ›Enter address‹



Selecting country

 Say country of destination.

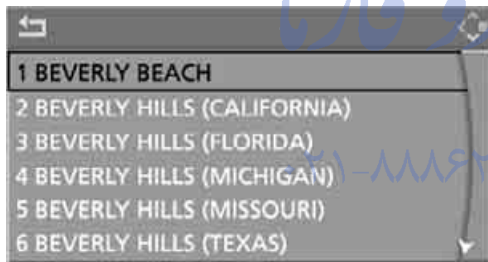
Say the name of the destination country in the language of the voice input system.


Entering destination

To enter the destination, spell it using the orthography of the country of destination. Say the letters smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.

1. Spell town/city name:
Say at least the first three letters of the destination. The more letters you say, the more exactly the system recognizes the town/city.

The system can suggest up to 20 destinations that match your entries. Up to 6 entries are displayed at once on the Control Display.



 A destination is suggested by the system.

2. Select location:
Select ›Yes‹
or
Select other town/city:
›No‹
Select entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
The following options are available:
›Next page‹: additional entries of the list are displayed.
›Repeat‹: the town/city can be respelled.


The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:

Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering street and house number


The street is entered in the same way as the destination.

To enter the house number:

 Say the house number.

Up to 4-digit house numbers can be entered.


Starting destination guidance

 ›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Saving destination

The destination is added to the destination list or can be saved in the address book.

 ›Add to destination list‹ or
›Add to address book‹

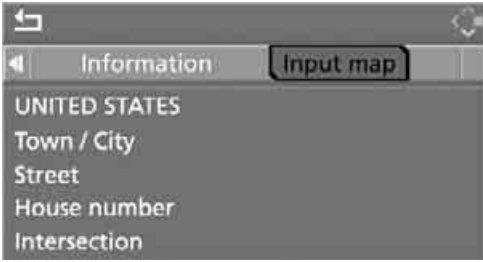
Map-guided destination selection

If you only know the location of the town or street of the destination, then you can input the destination by using a map. You can use the cursor to select the destination on the map and then adopt it into the destination guidance.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
"New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.



3. Select "Input map" and press the controller.



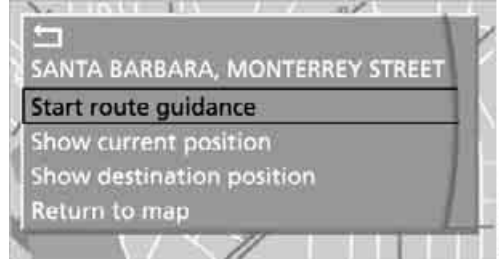
A section of a map is displayed on the Control Display:

- ▷ During destination guidance, around the current destination
- ▷ With the destination guidance deactivated, around the last destination entered




4. Select destination with cursor.
 - ▷ Changing scale: turn the controller.
 - ▷ Moving map: move the controller in the corresponding direction. The controller can be moved to the left, right, forward, backwards and also diagonally.
5. To apply or save the destination in the destination guidance system, press the controller. The selected destination and other menu items are displayed.
6. Select the desired menu item:
 - ▷ "Start route guidance" starts destination guidance.
 - ▷ "Show current position" places the current position in the center of the map.

- ▷ "Show destination position" places the current destination in the center of the map.
- ▷ "Return to map" changes back to the "Input map".
- ▷ ↩ Exit the menu.



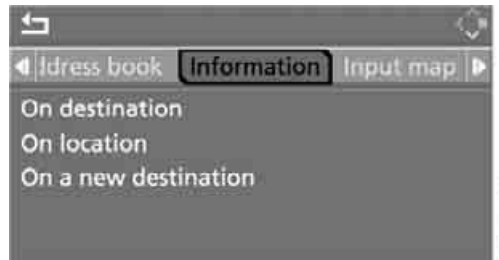
7. Press the controller.

The map for the destination entry can also be displayed in the map display: Select the  symbol and press the controller.

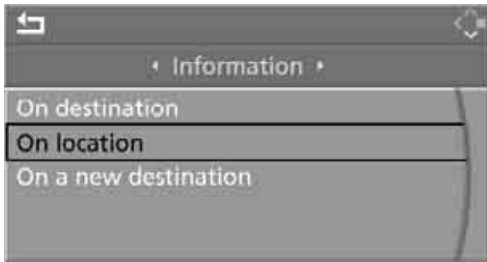
Selecting destination using information

You can obtain a display of selected destinations, e.g. hotels, sights or hospitals, and adopt them into the destination guidance.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller. "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
3. Select "Information" and press the controller.



4. Select location:
 - ▷ "On destination"
 - ▷ "On location"
 - ▷ "On a new destination"



5. Press the controller.
6. Make your selection, e.g. "Hotels and restaurants", and press the controller. These destinations are displayed on the Control Display.



7. Select a destination and press the controller.
8. Select a menu item:
 - ▷ To accept the address into the destination list and start the destination guidance: Select "Select as destination" and press the controller.
 - ▷ To establish a telephone connection: Select "Call" and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:

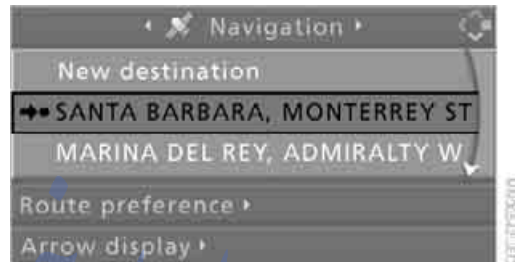
- ↶ Select the arrow and press the controller.

Destination list

The last 20 entered destinations are shown in the destination list. You can display these destinations and apply them in the destination guidance system.

For example, to plan a longer route, you can store all destinations you want to drive to in advance in the destination list, refer to Entering a destination manually on page 133.

Select "Navigation" and press the controller.



The last destination entered is the first item in the destination list.

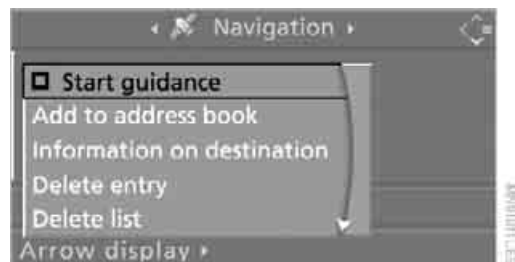
➡ This symbol indicates the current destination during destination guide.

To display additional destinations from the destination list: تلفن شماره

Turn the controller.

Applying destination in destination guidance system

1. Select the desired destination and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



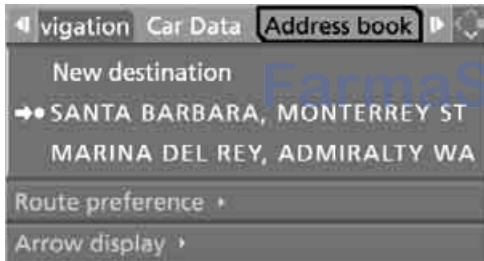
Editing destination list

1. Select the desired destination in the destination list and press the controller.
2. The selected destination can be edited:
 - ▷ Save entry:
Select "Add to address book".
 - ▷ Display information on destination:
Select "Information on destination".
 - ▷ Delete entry:
Select "Delete entry".
 - ▷ Delete all entries:
Select "Delete list". The destination guidance is switched off.
 - ▷ Change entry:
Select "Edit". For operation, refer to Entering destination via town/city name, page 134.
3. Press the controller.

Address book

Opening address book

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

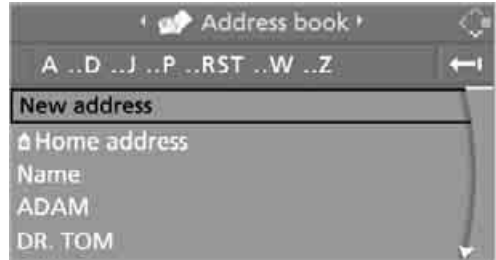


Select "Address book" and press the controller.

Storing destinations in address book

You can store approx. 100 destinations in the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select "New address" and press the controller.



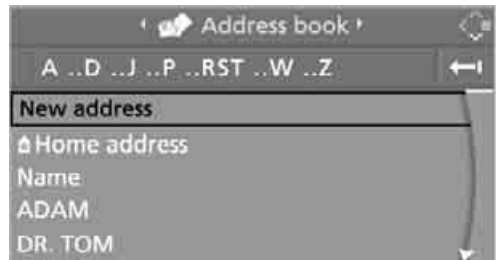
3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.
4. Enter name and address.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.
The entry is stored in the address book.

You can also save a destination from the destination list into the address book, refer to page 139.

Storing current position*

The current position can be adopted into the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top.
Turn the controller until "New address" is selected and press the controller.



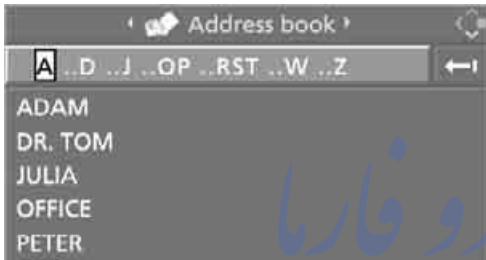
3. Select "Use current location as address" and press the controller.
The name given can be changed. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 133.

4. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

You can also enter your current position into the address book if you have left the sector covered by the navigation DVD. In this case, you must enter a name.

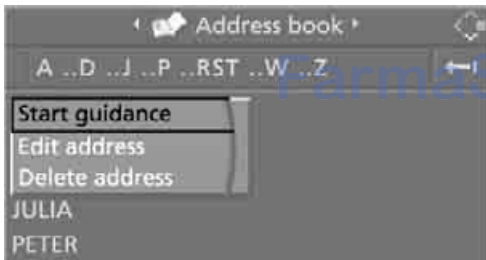
Selecting destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
The stored entries appear on the Control Display.



2. Select the entry and press the controller.

To start the destination guidance:
Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



Changing destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.

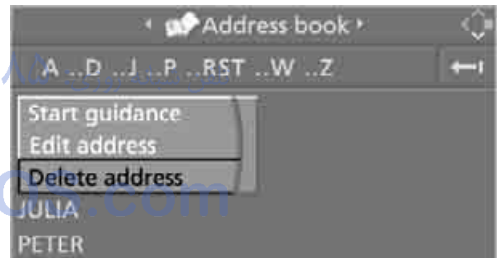
3. Select "Edit address" and press the controller.



4. Change entry.
For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 133.

Deleting individual destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Delete address" and press the controller.



Deleting all destinations from address book

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Vehicle settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "Delete data" and press the controller.

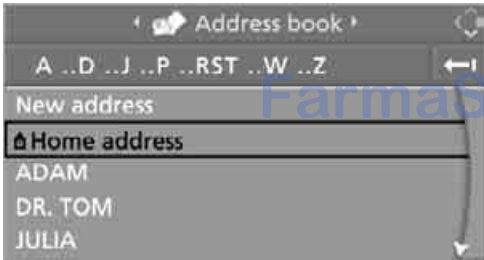


5. Select "Delete address book" and press the controller.
6. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Storing home address

You can save your current position or the current destination as the home address in the address book. This entry occupies the second position in the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Home address" is selected and press the controller.



3. Select "Use current location as address", or "Save current destination" during the destination guidance, and press the controller.

To accept the home address as the destination:

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

To change the entry:

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Edit address" and press the controller. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 133.

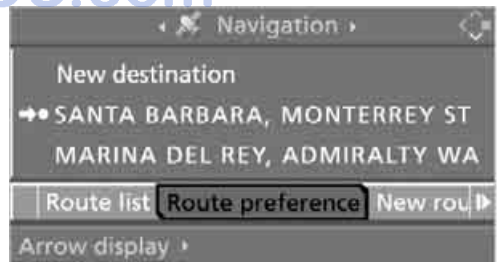
Selecting route

You can influence the calculated route by choosing certain route criteria. You can change the route criteria as often as you like while entering the destination and whenever the destination guidance is active.

The route is planned according to fixed rules. The type of road is taken into account, e.g. whether it is a highway or a winding road. The road types are stored on the navigation DVD. As a result, the routes recommended by the navigation system may not always be the same ones that you would choose based on personal experience.

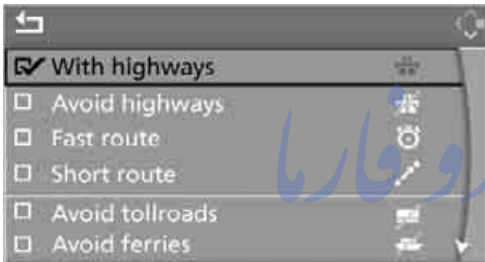
Changing route criteria

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route preference" is selected and press the controller.



The various criteria are listed on the Control Display.

3. Select a route criterion for the route:
 - ▷ "With highways"
Freeways and major traffic arteries are given priority
 - ▷ "Avoid highways"
Freeways are avoided where possible
 - ▷ "Fast route"
The short traveling time, being a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads
 - ▷ "Short route"
Short route, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be
4. Press the controller.



The route criterion is highlighted.

5. If necessary, select an additional route criterion and then press the controller:
 - ▷ "Avoid tollroads"
Tollroads are avoided where possible.
 - ▷ "Avoid ferries"
Ferries are avoided where possible.

To exit the menu:

↩ Select the arrow and press the controller.

The route criteria can also be changed in the map view:

1. Select the symbol for the route criterion and press the controller.
2. Select a route criterion and press the controller.

Word matching principle

The system supports the word matching principle to make it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns. The system runs ongoing checks, comparing your destination entries with the data stored on the navigation DVD as the basis for instant response. The user benefits include:

- ▷ Names of specific locations can also vary from the official versions if you are using a spelling that is customary in another country.

Example:

Instead of "München", you can also enter the English spelling "Munich" or the Italian spelling "Monaco".

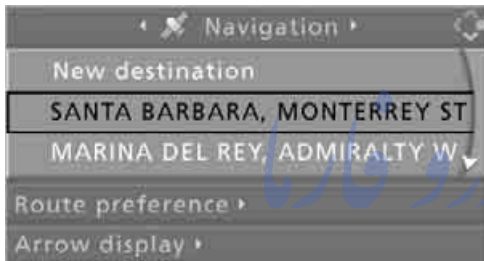
- ▷ When you are entering the names of towns and streets the system will complete them automatically as soon as enough letters are available to ensure unambiguous identification.
- ▷ The system only accepts name entries beginning with letters that are stored on the navigation DVD. The system will not accept non-existent names and addresses.

Destination guidance

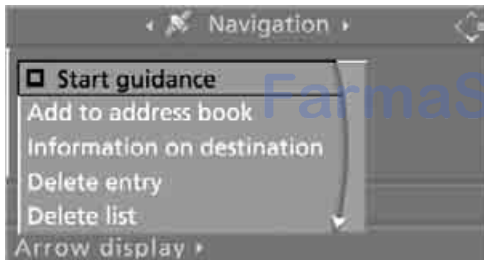
Starting destination guidance

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
2. Select a destination from the destination list and press the controller or enter a new destination, refer to page 133.




3. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



After the route has been calculated, destination guidance is indicated by arrows or a map display on the Control Display.


The destination guidance can also be started in the arrow or map display:

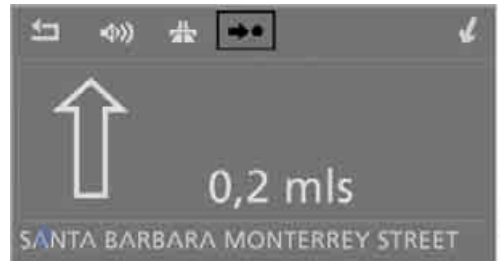
Select the  symbol and press the controller.

During destination guidance, you can operate other equipment using the iDrive at any time. You will be punctually notified of a change of direction by spoken instructions and the display of the direction arrow.


Terminating/continuing destination guidance

In arrow or map display

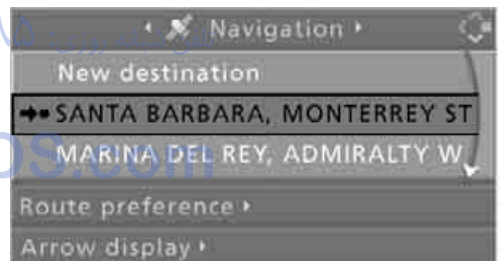
Select the  symbol and press the controller.



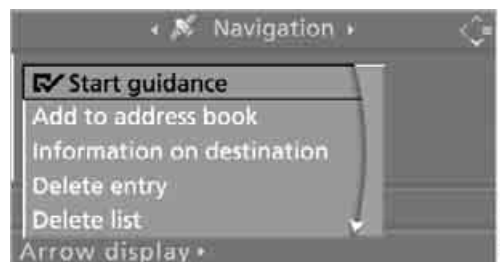
In destination list

 This symbol indicates the current destination.

1. Select the current destination and press the controller.



2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.




When you park the vehicle before reaching the entered destination, the following question is displayed before beginning the next trip: "Continue guidance to destination?".

The destination guidance starts automatically after a short time.

To start the destination guidance: Select "Yes" and press the controller.

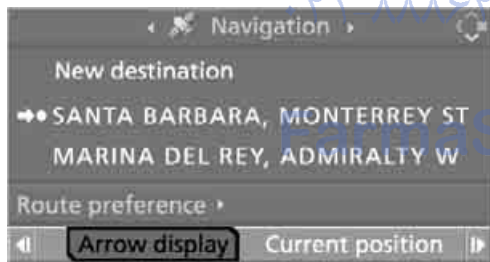
Route display

You have the option of displaying various views of the route during destination guidance.

 From another menu, you can switch directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Comfort opening of menu items on page 18. ◀

Displaying arrow display

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Arrow display" is selected and press the controller.



The arrow display is shown.



- 1 Switching voice instructions on/off
- 2 Selecting route criteria
- 3 Starting/ending destination guidance
- 4 Arrow to destination from a bird's eye view
- 5 Distance to the next change of direction
- 6 Current position
- 7 Direction of travel

- ▷ Outline arrow: Destination guidance on the calculated route.
- ▷ Solid arrow: Arrow shows the route to be calculated from a bird's eye view when the vehicle is not located in an area contained on the navigation DVD, e.g. in a multi-level parking lot.

Depending on the equipment, the estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination are displayed in the top or bottom line of the Control Display.

Before a change in direction, the representation of the arrow changes.



- 1 Street name for change of direction
- 2 Distance up to change of direction
- 3 Change of direction

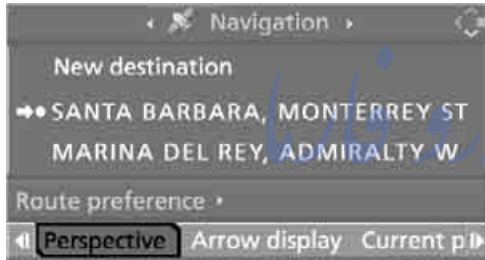
To exit the menu:

Select the arrow and press the controller.

Displaying map display

You can have your current position displayed on a map. After starting the destination guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired map view is selected:
 - ▷ "Map facing north"
 - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
 - ▷ "Perspective"



3. Press the controller.



- 1 Switching voice instructions on/off
- 2 Starting/ending destination guidance
- 3 Map-guided destination selection
- 4 Showing/hiding information last selected, refer to Selecting destination using information on page 138

5 Changing map display

- ▷ "Map facing north"
- ▷ "Map direction of travel"
- ▷ "Perspective"

6 Changing route criteria

7 Arrow to destination from a bird's eye view

The estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination are shown in the bottom line of the Control Display.

To exit the menu:

Select the arrow and press the controller.

At scales of less than 250 miles/500 km, you have the option of deciding whether to orient the map to north, toward your current direction of travel, or show the map in perspective. At scales of 250 miles/500 km or greater, the map always points toward north.

Changing map display



Select the corresponding symbol and press the controller.

The next map display is displayed.

Changing scale

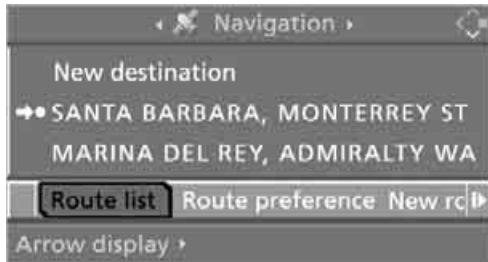
Turn the controller to adjust the scale.

Displaying towns/cities and streets of route

You can have the roads and towns along the route displayed during destination guidance.

The distances remaining to be traveled on each individual road are also displayed.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route list" is selected and press the controller.

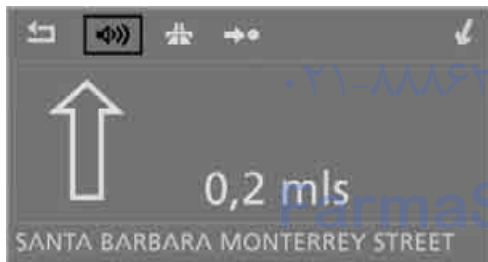


To exit the menu:


➡ Select the arrow and press the controller.

Destination guidance through voice instructions

Switching voice instructions on/off



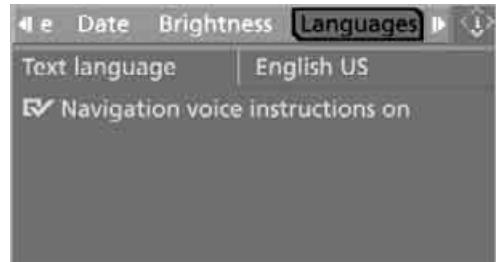
Voice instructions can be switched on or off during the destination guidance in the arrow or map view:

Select the  symbol and press the controller.

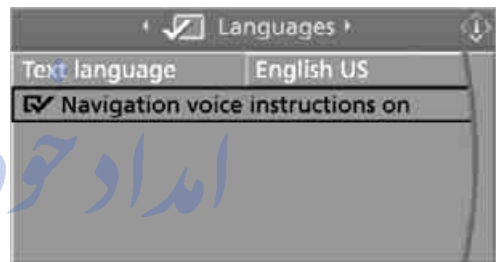
To switch the voice instructions on and off at any time:

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Display settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



5. Select "Navigation voice instructions on" and press the controller.



The voice instructions are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use*.

Repeating and canceling voice instructions

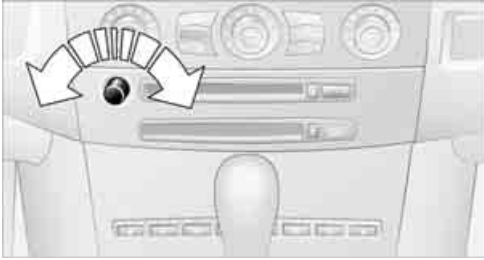
With the programmable buttons on the steering wheel you can also make the following settings, refer to page 53:

- ▷ Repeat the voice instruction:
Press button.
- ▷ Switch voice instructions on/off:
Hold the button down.

Setting volume of voice instructions

The volume can only be adjusted while a voice instruction is being output.

1. Repeat the last voice instruction, if necessary.
2. Turn the button during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.



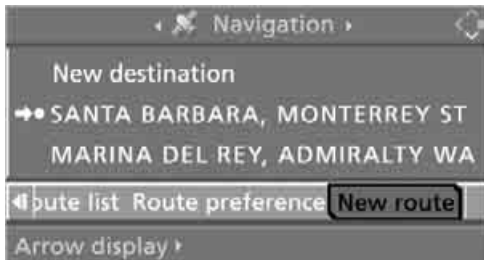
This volume is independent of the volume of the audio sources.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Bypassing route sections

During destination guidance, you can revise the navigation system's route recommendations to avoid particular stretches of road. Enter the number of miles/kilometers that you want to travel before returning to the original route.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "New route" is selected and press the controller.



3. Turn the controller to enter the desired number and press the controller.

The route is recalculated.

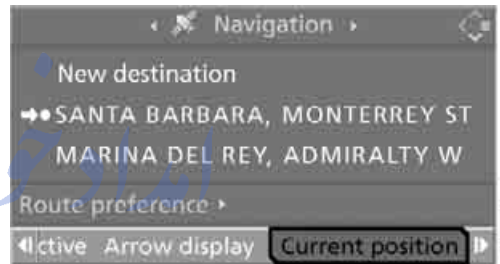
To exit from the menu without changing the route:

- ➡ Select the arrow and press the controller.

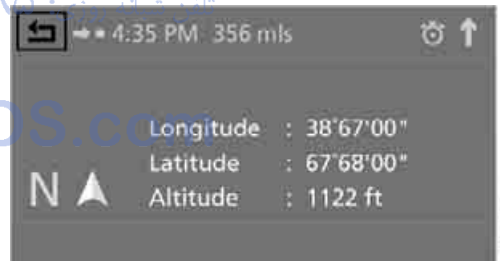
Displaying current position

You can have your current position displayed even when the destination guidance is switched off.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Current position" is selected and press the controller.



The current position of your BMW is displayed.



If the navigation system is unable to identify a town or city, your current map coordinates will appear.

To exit the menu:

- ➡ Select the arrow and press the controller.

You can also have the current position displayed on a map, refer to page 146.

What to do if ...

What to do if ...

- ▶ a navigation DVD is inserted, but an instruction to insert the DVD appears on the Control Display?

The navigation DVD may not be the correct DVD for the navigation system. This information is indicated on the DVD label.

- ▶ you request the current position of your vehicle, but do not receive a precise display?

The system is unable to receive enough GPS signals at your current position due to obstructions, your position is not yet available on your navigation DVD, or the system is in the process of calculating your position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.

- ▶ the destination guidance does not accept a destination?

The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.

- ▶ the destination guidance does not accept an address without the street name?

On the navigation DVD, no downtown area can be determined for the city or town entered. Enter any street, or a destination such as the railway station in the selected town, and then start the destination guidance.

- ▶ you want to enter a destination for the destination guidance, but it is not possible to select the letters for your desired entry?

The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. In this case, the system will not offer you any letters to choose from. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.

- ▶ the system stops furnishing directions on which way to turn as you approach intersections?

You are driving in an area that has not yet been completely recorded on the navigation DVD. Instead of an arrow indicating a turn, you will see an arrow which indicates the general direction of your planned route. Or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new recommended route.

- ▶ the navigation system does not react to entries?

If the battery was disconnected, it takes about 10 minutes before the system is once again operational.



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Entertainment

Operation of the radio and CD as well as their tone settings are described in this chapter.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

On/off and tone

The following audio sources have shared controls and setting options:

- ▷ Professional radio* or Business radio
- ▷ CD player
- ▷ CD changer*

Controls

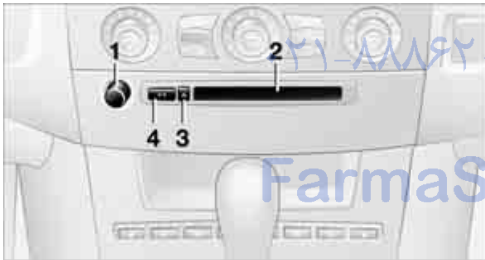
The audio sources can be operated using:

- ▷ Buttons in the area of the CD player
- ▷ iDrive
- ▷ Buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 11

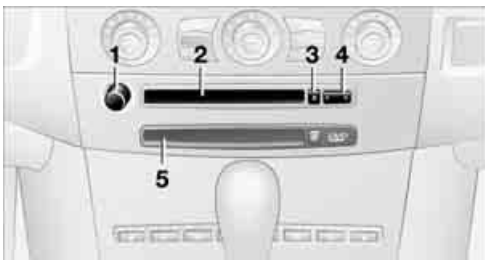
Buttons in area of CD player

The layout of the buttons can vary depending on your vehicle's equipment.

Single drive:



Two drives:



- 1 Entertainment sound output on/off, volume
 - ▷ Press: switch on/off.
When you switch on, the last set radio station or CD track is played.
 - ▷ Turn: adjust volume.
- 2 Drive for audio CDs
- 3 Eject CD
- 4 Station scan/track search
 - ▷ Change radio station.
 - ▷ Select track for CD player and CD changer.
- 5 Drive for navigation DVDs

Operation via iDrive

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".



You have the following choices:

- ▷ "FM" and "AM": radio reception
- ▷ "WB": Weather Band station
- ▷ "SAT": satellite radio
- ▷ "CD": CD player or CD changer
- ▷ "Audio Aux": external audio device
- ▷ "Set": depending on the audio source, other adjustments can be made, e.g. with the radio: update station with strongest reception, save station, tone control, sample stations.



From another menu, you can switch directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Comfort opening of menu items on page 18. ◀

The selected audio source is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Switching on/off

In order to switch the Entertainment sound output on and off:

Press knob **1** next to the CD player.

■ This symbol on the Control Display indicates that sound output is switched off.

For a single drive, the sound output is available for approx. 20 minutes with the ignition switched off.

Switch on the sound output again for this purpose.

Adjusting volume

Turn knob **1** next to the CD player until the desired volume is set.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Tone control

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass, or the speed-dependent volume increase.

The tone settings are set for all audio sources at once.

The settings are stored for the remote key currently in use.

Changing tone settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Entertainment settings" and press the controller.



4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.



The tone settings can also be selected when you have opened "Entertainment" in the start menu:

Select "Set" and then "Tone", and press the controller.

Treble and bass

1. Select "Treble / Bass" and press the controller.



2. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Treble" or "Bass".



3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Balance and fader

You can adjust the volume distribution in the same manner as "Treble / Bass".

- ▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution
- ▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

Speed-dependent volume control

The speed-dependent volume control automatically increases the volume with increasing speed. You can set various stages for the increase in volume.

1. Select "Speed volume" and press the controller.



2. Turn controller: The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.



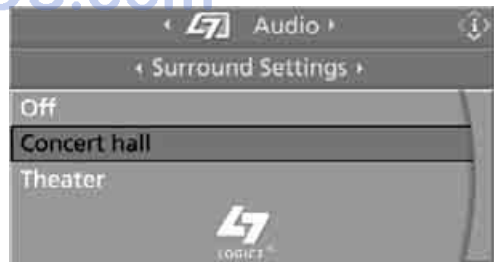
Professional LOGIC7 HiFi System*

You can select a spatial sound effect that improves the spatial acoustics in all frequency ranges.

1. Select "Surround Settings" and press the controller.



2. Select "Concert hall" or "Theater".



3. Press the controller. LOGIC7 spatial sound is switched on.

To cancel the stereo effect:
Select "Off" and press the controller.

LOGIC7 and the LOGIC7 logo are registered trade marks of Lexicon, Inc., a company of the Harman International Group.

Equalizer*

You can set individual sound frequency ranges.

1. Select "Equalizer" and press the controller.



2. Move the controller to the left or right to select the desired frequency range.



3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Resetting tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default settings.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Entertainment settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.
5. Select "Reset" and press the controller.



Radio

Your radio provides reception the FM and AM wavebands.

Listening to radio



Press the button if the sound output is switched off.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "FM" or "AM" is selected.



4. Press the controller.

Stations are shown on the Control Display on the basis of various selection criteria, e.g. "Presets".

If "Autostore" does not display any stations or if the stations displayed can no longer be received, to update the station with the strongest signal, refer to page 157.

Changing stations



Turn the controller.

In addition to the stations currently displayed, you can have stations with another selection criterion displayed.

Professional radio*

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

- ▷ "All stations":
Stations that can currently be received in the "FM" waveband.
- ▷ "Autostore":
The stations with the strongest received signals in the "AM" waveband.
- ▷ "Presets":
Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 158.

Business radio

You can choose from the following selection criteria:


- ▷ "Autostore":
For the Station with the strongest signal, refer to page 157.
- ▷ "Presets":
Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 158.

Changing selection criteria

1. Change into the second field from the top.
2. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.



Buttons next to CD player

Press the  button for the corresponding direction. The system switches to the next displayed station. You can also change stations with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Sampling stations, scan

The system automatically plays a brief sample from each of the stations on the current waveband.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller. "Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Scan" and press the controller.




The stations are sampled.

To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling of the stations, and the radio remains on the current station.

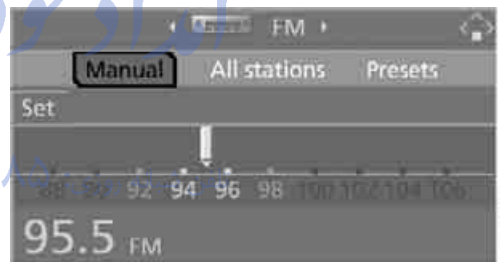
Buttons next to CD player

 To sample the stations, press and hold the button for the corresponding direction. To stop scanning, press the button again.

Selecting frequency manually

With "Manual" you can select stations that are received in addition to those displayed.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Manual" and press the controller.



4. Turn the controller to set a certain frequency.

Updating stations with best reception

For Professional radio with "AM" and with Business radio:

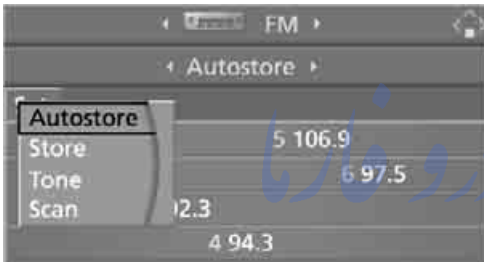
If you are on a longer journey and leave the transmission range of the stations originally set, you can update the list of stations with the best reception.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top.

3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller. "Set" is selected.



4. Press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.

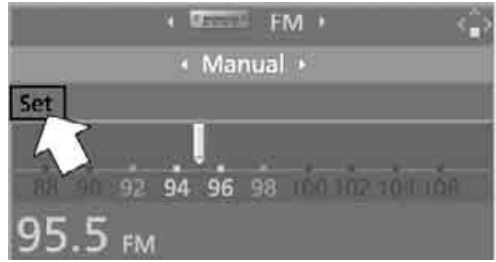


The display of the stations with the strongest reception is updated. The frequencies of the stations are displayed.

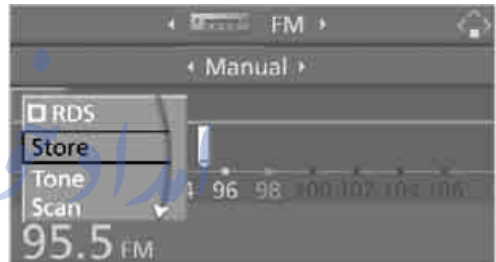
Storing stations

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.

3. Select the desired frequency or station. "Set" is selected.



4. Press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Store" and press the controller.



6. Turn the controller until the desired memory position is selected.
7. Press the controller. The station is stored.



The channels of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time. The stations are stored for the remote key currently in use.

Changing a memory position

1. Select "Presets" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired station.
"Set" is selected.
3. Press the controller.
Other menu items are displayed.
4. Select "Store" and press the controller.



5. Turn the controller until the desired memory position is selected.
The number of the memory position appears beside the name or frequency of the station.
6. Press the controller.
The station is stored.

RDS Radio Data System

RDS transmits additional information in the FM frequency range. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. If the reception is weak or disrupted, it can take some time before the station names are displayed.

Switching RDS on/off*

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
"Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
Other menu items are displayed.

3. Select "RDS" and press the controller.



RDS is activated.

Automatically sorting stations*

For the "All stations" selection criterion, you can set whether the most frequently used stations are displayed at the beginning.

1. Select "All stations" and press the controller.
"Set" is selected.
2. Select "Favorites" and press the controller.



The most frequently used stations are shown at the beginning.

Weather news flashes*

Weather Radio is a service of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) of the US Department of Trade. Weather news flashes are repeated every 4 to 6 minutes and are routinely updated at intervals of 1 to 3 hours, and more often when necessary. Most stations operate 24 hours a day. In case of a storm, the National Weather Service interrupts

the routine weather news and transmits special warning messages instead. If you have a question about NOAA Weather Radio, please contact the nearest office of the National Weather Service. Details are also provided on the Internet at www.nws.noaa.gov.

Calling up weather news flashes

1. Select "WB" and press the controller.



2. Select a station.

The station for weather news flashes may be unavailable in some regions.

High Definition Radio*

Many stations transmit both analog and digital signals. You can receive these stations digitally and in improved sound quality.

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.

3. Select "Entertainment settings" and press the controller.



4. Select "HD radio" and press the controller.



5. Select "Off" and press the controller.
 The reception of digital stations is deactivated.

HD This symbol is displayed when a sender is being received digitally.



With some stations the digital signals are not transmitted simultaneously with the analog signals. If you are in an area in which the selected station is not continuously received digitally, playback switches between analog and digital reception. This can result in repetitions or interruptions. In this case it may be advisable to deactivate digital radio reception.

Updating stations offering digital reception

If you are on a longer journey and leave the transmission range of the stations originally set, you can update the list of stations with the best reception.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.



2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.



4. Press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Autostore HD" and press the controller.



The display of the stations offering digital reception is updated. This can take up to 2 minutes.

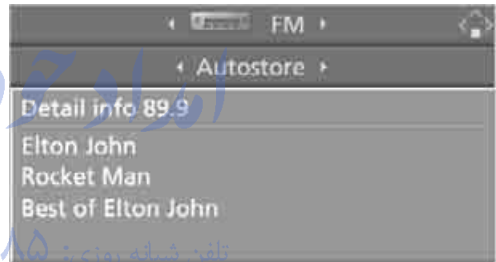
Displaying additional information

With the digital stations, additional information on the current track is displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Select a station and press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



- The information is displayed.



If a digital station is received again when the station is changed, the additional information will be displayed again following a brief interruption.

Satellite radio*

You can receive over 100 different channels with high sound quality.

The channels are offered to you in predefined packages. To receive the channels of your choice, you must have this package enabled.

With this new technology the signal may fail, causing interruptions in reception. ◀

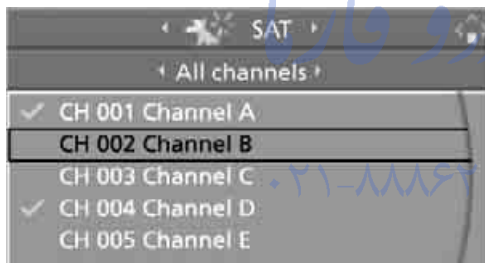
Enabling or disabling channels

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Select "SAT".



4. Press the controller.

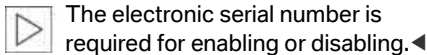


The channels are displayed.

- ✓ These channels are enabled.

Enabling

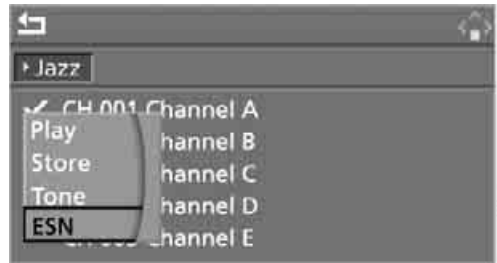
1. Select a channel that has not yet been enabled and press the controller.
A telephone number and the electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.



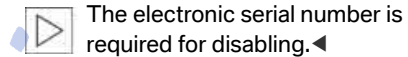
2. To enable the channels:
Dial the phone number.

Disabling

1. Select an enabled channel and press the controller.



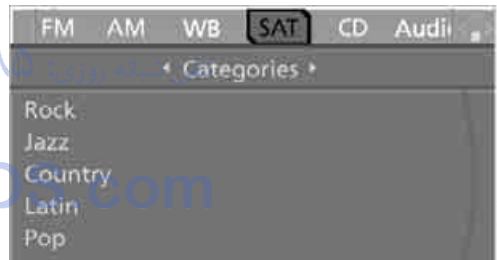
2. Select "ESN" and press the controller.
The electronic serial number, ESN, is displayed.



3. To disable the channels:
Dial the phone number.

Selecting and storing channel

1. Select "SAT" and press the controller.



Channels are shown on the Control Display sorted on the basis of selection criteria.

2. Select a menu item:
 - ▷ "Presets":
Up to twelve channels you have stored previously.
 - ▷ "All channels":
All channels are displayed.
 - ▷ "Categories":
All channels, sorted by categories, e.g. news, jazz.

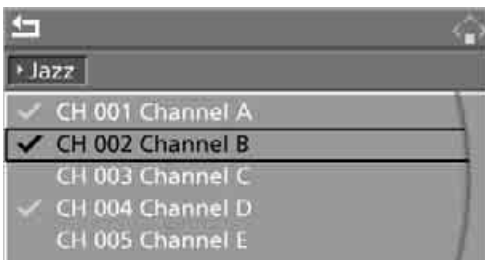


3. Press the controller.
4. If "Categories" has been selected:
Select the desired category and press the controller.

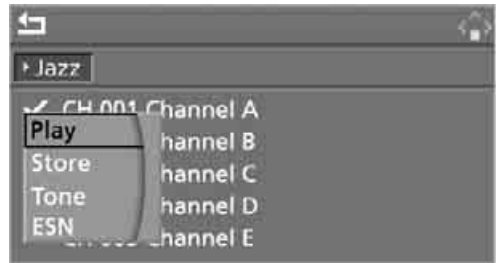


The channels of this category are displayed.

5. ✓ Select a channel marked with this symbol.

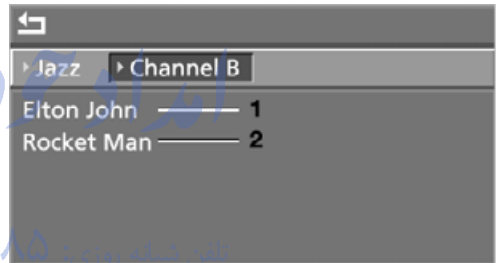


6. Press the controller.
Other menu items are displayed.
7. Select "Play" and press the controller.



Additional information

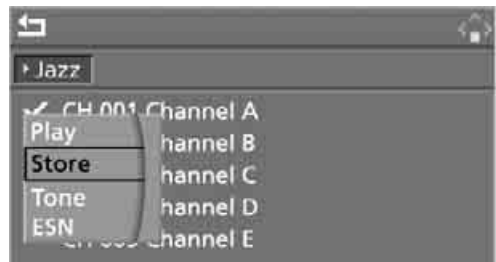
The name of the channel and additional information on the current track are displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.



- 1 Artist
- 2 Track

Storing channel

1. Select desired channel.
2. Press the controller.
Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Store" and press the controller.




"Presets" is displayed.

- Turn the controller to select a memory location and press the controller.



The channel is stored. The channels of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.


Changing channel with buttons next to CD player

Press the  button for the corresponding direction.

The system switches to the next enabled channel.

Notes

If no signal can be received for more than 4 seconds, a message is displayed on the Control Display.

 Reception may not be possible for certain reasons, e.g. environmental influences or topographical conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.

The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages, next to tall buildings, near trees, mountains or other sources of radio interference.

Reception is usually possible again as soon as the signal is available again. ◀

CD player and CD changer*

Listening to CDs

Compressed audio files*

CDs with compressed audio files, i.e. MP3, can be played by the CD player, but not by the CD changer.

CD player: starting CD



When equipped with two drives:
The upper drive is for audio CDs.

Insert the CD into the drive with the labeled side up. The CD is automatically pulled in. Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on. For CDs with compressed audio files, it can take up to approx. 1 minute to read in the data depending on the directory structure.

To start playback when there is already a CD in the drive:

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".


3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.



4. On vehicles with a CD changer, change to the second field from the top and turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.
The CD player is started.



Playback starts automatically if the sound output is switched on.

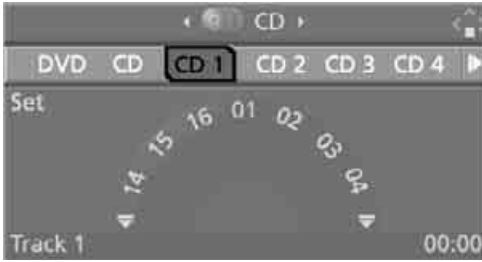
To eject the CD, press the  button on the CD player.

The CD emerges slightly from the drive.

CD changer: starting CD

1. Fill the CD magazine and insert, refer to page 169.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
3. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
4. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.

- Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until the desired CD, CD 1 - 6, is selected and press the controller.



At the end of the last track, the next CD will be selected.

If new CDs have been placed in the CD magazine, playback starts with the lowest CD, e.g. CD 1, track 1.

The CD magazine's load status is indicated on the Control Display.

Selecting a track

Buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction repeatedly until you reach the desired track.

The CD will start play at the start of the track. The track is displayed on the Control Display.

You can also change the track with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

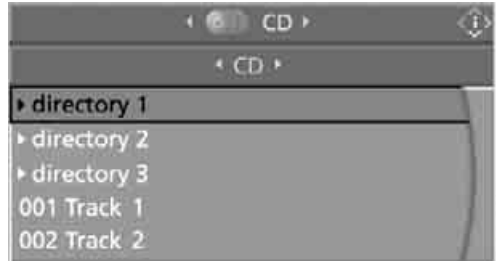
Via iDrive

Select a track by turning the controller.

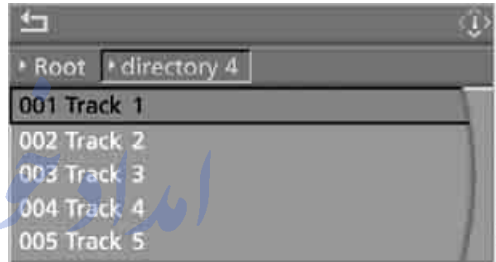


Compressed audio files*

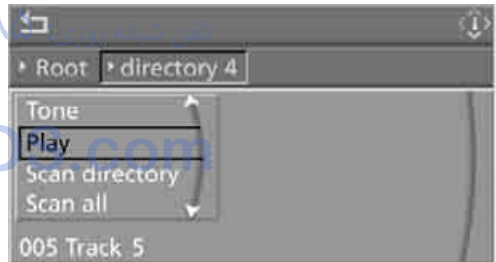
- Select the directory if necessary and press the controller.



- Select the track and press the controller.

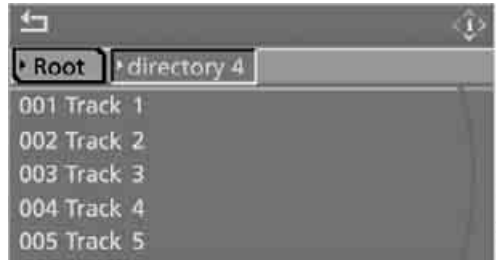


- Select "Play" and press the controller.



To change the directory:

Select the directory and press the controller.



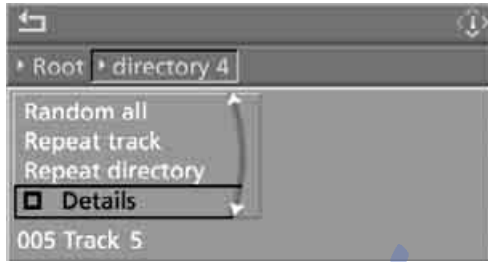
To exit from the menu:

↩ Select the arrow and press the controller.

Displaying information on track*

With compressed audio files, you can display any information stored on the current track, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



The information for the current track are displayed.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Sampling tracks, scan

The system automatically plays a brief sample from each of the tracks on the current CD.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
Other menu items are displayed.



2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.



To end sampling:

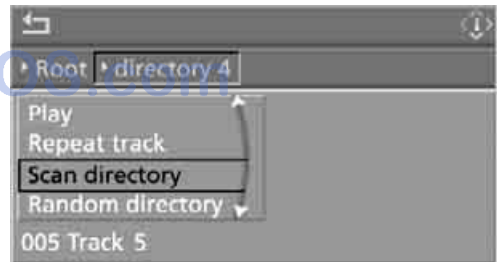
1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling of the tracks, and the player remains on the current track.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
 - ▶ To sample all tracks of the current directory, select "Scan directory" and press the controller.

▶ To sample all tracks of the CD, select "Scan all" and press the controller.



To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan directory" or "Scan all" and press the controller.

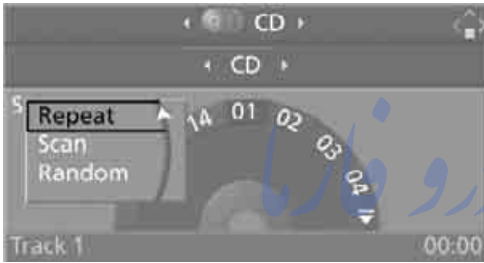
This cancels sampling, and the player remains on the current track.

Repeating a track

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.



2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.



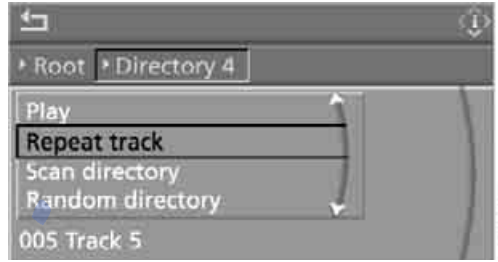
The current track on the CD is repeated.

To stop repeating:

1. Press the controller again.
2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
 - ▷ To repeat the selected track, select "Repeat track" and press the controller.
 - ▷ To repeat all tracks of the current directory, select "Repeat directory" and press the controller.



To stop repeating:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" or "Repeat directory" and press the controller.

Random play sequence

In this mode, the tracks on the current CD are played once in a random sequence.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Stop random function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
 - ▷ To play all tracks of the current directory in random order, select "Random directory" and press the controller.
 - ▷ To play all tracks of the CD in random order, select "Random all" and press the controller.

Stop random function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random directory" or "Random all" and press the controller.

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons next to CD player:

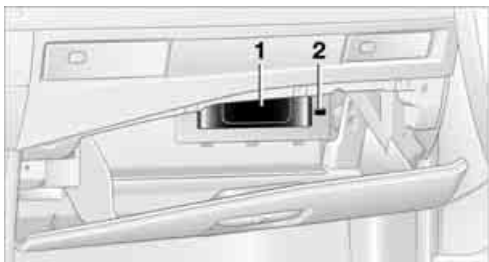
Press and hold the  button for the corresponding direction.

CD magazine

The BMW CD changer for six CDs is installed in the glove compartment.

Removing CD magazine

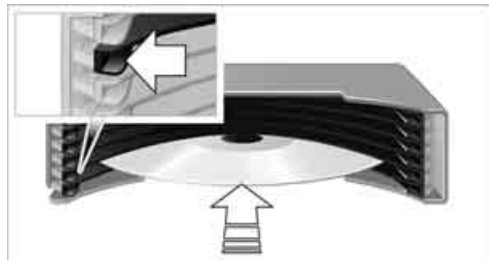
To insert CDs into the CD magazine **1** or remove them from it, you must first remove the magazine from the CD changer:



Press button **2** to eject the CD magazine **1**. Wait at least 2 seconds before pushing in the magazine again so that the inserted CDs can be read in again.

Inserting/removing CDs into/from CD magazine

When inserting or removing CDs, remember to hold them by their edges, taking care to avoid touching the data side with its reflective CD memory surface.



Inserting CDs:

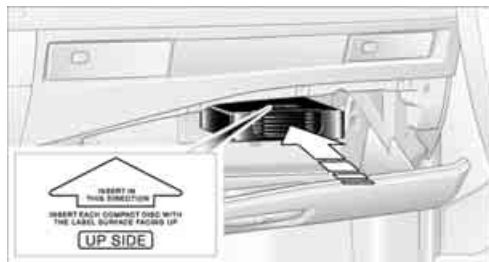
Insert one CD into each compartment of the magazine with the labeled side up.



Removing CDs:

Pull out the desired tray and remove the CD.


Inserting CD magazine



Push in the CD magazine as far as possible in the direction of the arrow.

The CD changer automatically reads in the loaded CDs and is then ready for operation.

Notes

 BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged, otherwise severe eye damage can result. Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied as these can become detached during playback due to heat build-up and can cause irreparable damage to the device.

Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g. Single-CDs, otherwise the CDs or the adapter can jam and may no longer be ejected.

Do not use a combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus}, otherwise the CD/DVD can jam and will no longer eject. ◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check if it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions only occur with individual CDs/DVDs, one of the following factors may be the cause.

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

Possible reasons for malfunctions with self-recorded CDs/DVDs are, e.g., inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or high age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the upper side with a pen intended for this purpose.

Damaged CDs/DVDs

Avoid fingerprints, dust, scratches and moisture.

Store CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.

Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F /50 °C, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often provided with a copy protection feature by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

Care

If necessary, clean the reflective scanning side of the CDs/DVDs with a commercially available cleaning cloth by wiping in straight lines from the center outward.

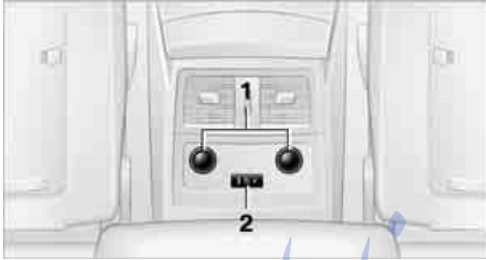
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

PharmaSOS.com

External audio device

You can connect an external audio device, e.g. an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle loudspeakers. The sound can be adjusted with iDrive.

Connecting



- 1 Power supply for your additional device:
Socket with removable cap
- 2 Connection for audio playback:
Jacks $\frac{1}{8}$ in/3.5 mm

For audio playback via the vehicle loudspeakers, connect the headphone or Line-Out connection of the device to the connection **2**.

3. Select "Audio Aux" and press the controller.



4. Adjust volume and sound if necessary.

Starting audio playback

The audio device must be switched on.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Communications

This chapter summarizes how to operate your mobile phone using iDrive or voice control and how to use BMW Assist or TeleService.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

Telephoning*

The concept


Your BMW is equipped with a full mobile phone preparation package. After logging on a suitable mobile phone on the vehicle once, you can operate the mobile phone via iDrive, with the buttons on the steering wheel and by voice.

A mobile phone that has been logged on once is automatically detected again with the engine running or the ignition switched on as soon as it is in the vehicle interior. The logon data of up to four mobile phones can be stored simultaneously. If several mobile phones are detected simultaneously, the respective last mobile phone logged on can be operated via the vehicle.

Using a phone in your vehicle

Using snap-in adapter*


The so-called snap-in adapter, a mobile phone cradle, enables the battery to be charged and the mobile phone to be connected to the external antenna of your vehicle. This ensures improved network reception and a consistent voice reproduction quality. Ask your BMW center which mobile phones snap-in adapters are offered for.

 BMW discourages the use of mobile phones or other mobile communications devices inside the vehicle without a direct connection to an outside antenna. Otherwise, the vehicle electronics and mobile communication device can influence one another. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation which results from transmission will be dissipated from the vehicle interior. ◀

Avoid operating a mobile phone detected by the vehicle with the keypad of the mobile phone, otherwise malfunctions can occur.

For your safety

A car phone makes life more convenient in many ways, and can even save lives in an emergency. While you should consult your mobile phone's separate operating instructions for a detailed description of safety precautions and information, we request that you direct your particular attention to the following:

 Only make entries when the traffic situation allows you to do so. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users. ◀

Suitable mobile phones

Ask your BMW center which mobile phones with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package or which mobile phones snap-in adapters are available for. These mobile phones support the functions described in this Owner's Manual with a certain software version. Malfunctions can occur with other mobile phones.

Care instructions

You can find what you need to know about caring for your mobile phone in the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure and in the mobile phone operating instructions.

Operating options

You can operate the mobile phone* using:

- ▷ The steering wheel, refer to page 11
- ▷ iDrive, refer to page 16
- ▷ Voice commands, refer to page 183

Making calls with car phone: BMW Assist calls

You can use the car phone via the hands-free system for BMW Assist calls.

When the status information "Communication" or "BMW Assist" is displayed in "BMW Service", only BMW Assist calls are possible.


It may not be possible to establish a telephone connection using the mobile phone while a connection is being established to BMW Assist or while a call to BMW Assist is already in progress. If this happens, you must log off the mobile phone from the vehicle if you wish to place a call with the mobile phone.

Commissioning

Logging on mobile phone on vehicle

The following prerequisites must be met:

- ▷ The mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ The Bluetooth link on the vehicle, refer to page 177, and on the mobile phone is active.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, presettings on the mobile phone are necessary: e.g. via the menu item Bluetooth activated or the menu item Connection not with confirmation.
- ▷ For logging on, specify any desired number as the Bluetooth passkey, e.g. 1. This Bluetooth passkey is no longer required following successful logon.
- ▷ The ignition is switched on.

 Only log on the mobile phone with the vehicle stopped, otherwise the passengers and other road user can be endangered due to a lack of attentiveness on the part of the driver. ◀

Switching on ignition

1. Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.
2. Switch on the switch on ignition by pressing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

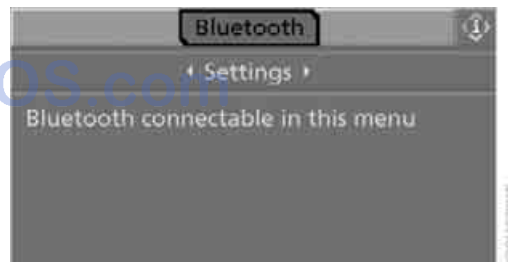
Preparation with iDrive

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.



2. Open the **i** menu by pressing the controller.
3. Select "Communication settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.



5. Select "Phone" and press the controller.



Preparation with mobile phone

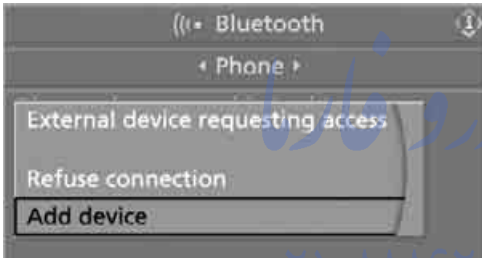
- Additional operations must be carried out on the mobile phone and differ depending on the model, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone, e.g. find, connect or link under Bluetooth device.

Logging on

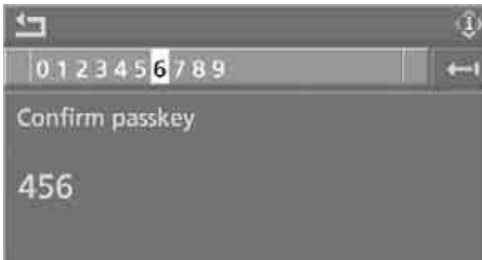
Depending on your mobile phone, you will first be requested consecutively via the display of your mobile phone or the Control Display to enter the Bluetooth passkey you specified.

Display on the Control Display if the Bluetooth passkey can be entered with iDrive:

- Select "Add device" and press the controller.



- Enter the Bluetooth passkey. Depending on the mobile phone, approx. 30 seconds are available for entering the Bluetooth passkey on the mobile phone and on the Control Display.



- Select "Confirm passkey" and press the controller.
- Wait a few seconds until the list of the logged-on mobile phones is shown on the Control Display and "Phone" is selected.

To cancel the logon of the mobile phone on the vehicle:

Select "Refuse connection" and press the controller.

The next time you use the mobile phone in the vehicle interior, it will be detected within a maximum of 2 minutes with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

As soon as a mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the phone book entries stored on the SIM card or on your mobile phone are transferred to your vehicle, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone if necessary. This transfer is dependent on your mobile phone, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone if necessary, and can take several minutes.

Up to four mobile phones can be logged on consecutively. If you log on a fifth mobile phone, the logon data of the last mobile phone in the list will be deleted, refer to below.

List of logged-on mobile phones

All mobile phones for which the vehicle has stored the logon data can be displayed. If several logged-on mobile phones are detected by the vehicle simultaneously, you can operate the mobile phone highest up in the list via the vehicle.

You can change the order of the mobile phones in the list. As long as a mobile phone is selected in this list, the mobile phones cannot be operated via the vehicle.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

- Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
- Open the **i** menu by pressing the controller.
- Select "Communication settings" and press the controller.
- Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.
- Select "Phone" and press the controller.

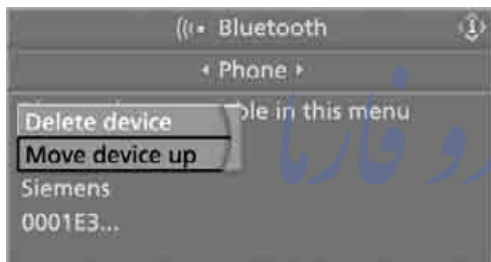
- 6. Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.



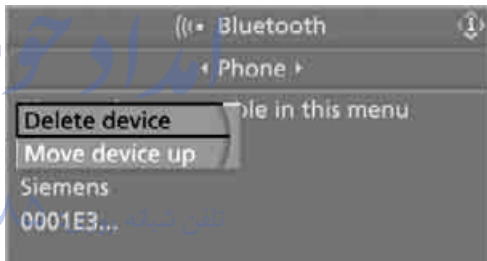
- 6. Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.



- 7. Select "Move device up" and press the controller. The selected mobile phone is move upward by one position.



- 7. Select "Delete device" and press the controller. The logged-off mobile phone is deleted from the list. The phone book entries you have transferred from your mobile phone to your vehicle are also deleted in the process.



Logging mobile phone off vehicle

If you no longer want to operate your mobile phone via the vehicle, you can delete the logon data of the mobile phone. iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
2. Open the **i** menu by pressing the controller.
3. Select "Communication settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.
5. Select "Phone" and press the controller.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth link

Bluetooth technology is not approved in all countries. Observe the applicable local regulations. Temporarily disconnect the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and the mobile phone if necessary. ◀

If the Bluetooth link is deactivated, you cannot operate your mobile phone via the vehicle and other devices with a Bluetooth interface can be used via the mobile phone, e.g. a laptop computer.

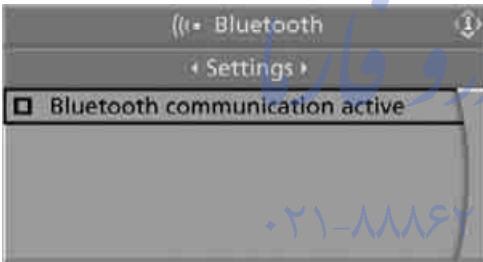
To temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between your vehicle and your mobile phone:

1. Remove the mobile phone from the snap-in adapter and switch it off.
2. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
3. Select the **i** menu and press the controller.

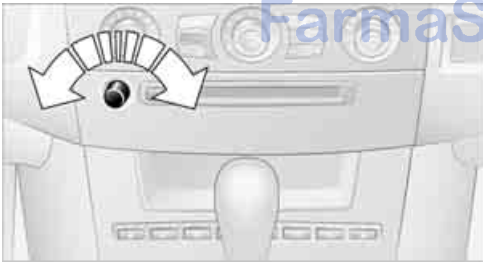
4. Select "Communication settings" and press the controller.
5. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.



6. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
 The Bluetooth link is activated.
7. Select "Bluetooth communication active" and press the controller to activate or deactivate the link.



Adjusting volume



Turn the knob during a call to select the desired volume.

This volume for the hands-free system is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Operation via iDrive

You can operate the following functions via iDrive:

- ▷ Dial phone numbers.
- ▷ Dial phone numbers from the phone book.
- ▷ Dial stored phone numbers, e.g. from the list of accepted calls.
- ▷ Hang up.

With the ignition switched off and radio readiness, e.g. after removing the remote control, you can continue an ongoing call for a maximum of 25 minutes via the handsfree system.

Requirements

The logon data of the mobile phone are stored in the vehicle and the mobile phone is ready to operate.

The engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

The mobile phone is detected by the vehicle. iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.



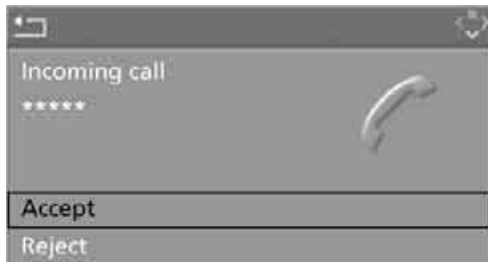
This opens the start menu.

2. Move the controller forward to open "Communication".

Receiving calls

If you have the phone number of the caller stored in the phone book and the phone number has been transmitted, the name of the entry is displayed.

Accepting a call



Select "Accept" and press the controller.

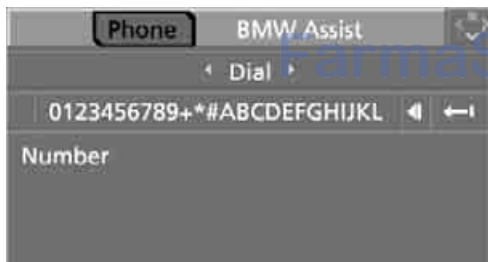
Rejecting a call

Select "Reject" and press the controller. The caller is diverted to your mailbox if it has been activated.


Calling

Dialing phone numbers ۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.



2. Select "Dial" and press the controller.
3. Enter the desired phone number by dialing the individual digits and pressing the controller. Always enter the complete phone number consisting of national dialing code, area code, and phone number. The letters correspond to the digits on the keypad of the mobile phone.

To delete an incorrect character: Move the controller toward the right to select , and press the controller.

4. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.

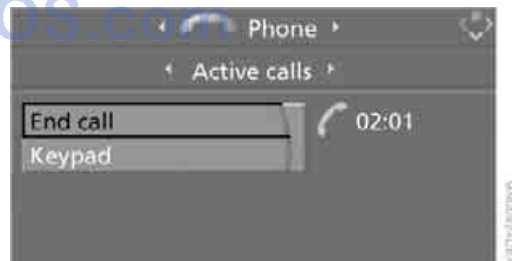


Ending a call

1. Select the phone number and press the controller.



2. Select "End call" and press the controller.



Dialing a phone number from phone book or a phone number stored in a list

Phone numbers you have called, incoming calls and the entries of the phone book are stored in lists when the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth. If the caller is entered in the phone book, the name of the entry is displayed instead of the phone number.

You can select the desired subscriber from the list and establish the connection.

Five lists are available:

- ▷ "A - Z"
The entries of the mobile-phone phone book, consisting of the name and phone number, are sorted alphabetically.
- ▷ "Top 8"
The eight numbers called most frequently from the phone book "A - Z" are automatically stored in the Top 8 list. The list is sorted according to frequency.
- ▷ "Redial"
The last eight phone numbers you have dialed are automatically stored. The last number dialed is at the top of the list.
- ▷ "Missed calls"
The phone numbers of the last eight calls which were not accepted are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been sent.
- ▷ "Received calls"
The phone numbers of the last eight accepted calls are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been sent.

Dialing phone numbers from phone book

The list "A - Z" is available for you phone book entries. The phone book entries appear on the Control Display.

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.



2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.

3. To limit the number of displayed entries, select the first letter of the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select the desired entry and press the controller.



5. Select "Call" and press the controller.
The system dials the number.

If different phone numbers are stored in the mobile phone under one name, e.g. office and home, the name is shown once for each phone number.

You can change a phone number stored in the phone book, e.g. to call a specific extension:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select "Add digits" and press the controller.
5. Change the phone number.
6. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.

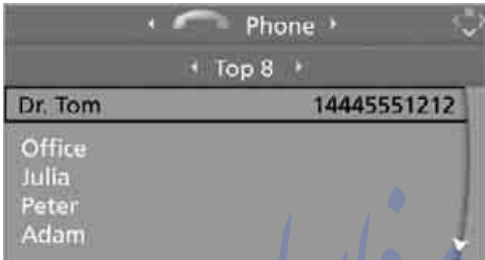
Dialing phone numbers stored in a list

To select an entry and establish a connection:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select list and press the controller:
 - ▷ "Top 8"
 - ▷ "Redial"
 - ▷ "Missed calls"
 - ▷ "Received calls"



3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.



4. Select "Call" and press the controller. The system dials the number.

Deleting individual entries

1. Select the desired entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete" and press the controller. The entry is deleted.



Deleting entire list

1. Select an entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete all numbers" and press the controller.



3. Select "Yes" and press the controller. The list is deleted.

BMW Contact*

If you are not activated for BMW Assist, you can display several service phone numbers:

- ▷ Roadside Assistance* of the BMW Group when you require breakdown assistance
- ▷ BMW center, e.g. when you want to make an appointment for service
- ▷ BMW Hotline* for information on all aspects of your vehicle

If BMW Assist is activated, refer to page 188.

You can select the displayed service phone number if your mobile phone is logged on in the vehicle:

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".

3. Select "BMW Contact" and press the controller.



4. Select "BMW Contact Numbers" and press the controller.



5. Select one of the following menu items and press the controller:
 - ▷ "Roadside Assistance"
 - ▷ "Customer Relations"
 - ▷ "Service Request"
6. Select "Call" and press the controller. Contact is established.

Transferring phone number via tone dialing method

The tone dialing method is required for access to network services or for controlling devices, e.g. remote checking of an answering machine.

This function is available when a connection has been established.

1. Establish connection.



2. Press the controller.
3. Select "Keypad" and press the controller.
4. Select the desired character and press the controller. Each character is sent immediately and confirmed by a tone depending the mobile phone model.



Changing between mobile phone and hands-free system


From mobile phone to handsfree system

You can continue calls begun outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle via the handsfree system when the motor is running or the ignition is switched on. Depending on your mobile phone, the system automatically switches over to the handsfree mode.

For mobile phones that do not automatically switch over to the handsfree mode:

- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone model used, the conversation can also be continued via the handsfree system if necessary.

Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.

- ▶ Press the  button above the storage compartment. Switching over may take several seconds.


From handsfree system to mobile phone

When you telephone via the handsfree system, you can also continue the call via the mobile phone if necessary, depending on the mobile phone model. Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.



Operation by voice*

The concept

You can operate your mobile phone without having to remove your hands from the steering wheel. When making your entries, you will be supported by announcements and questions in many cases.


The same prerequisites as for operation via : ۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی apply, refer to page 178.

Symbols in Owner's Manual


-  ...< Say the specified commands word for word.
-  ...<< Indicates responses of the system.

Voice commands

Activating system

1. Press the  button on the steering wheel. An acoustic signal indicates that you can say commands.
2. Say the command.
The text or numbers that the voice command system has registered will appear on the Control Display.

Ending/canceling operation by voice

Press the  button on the steering wheel or


 >Cancel<.

In dialogs where text is spoken, not a command, e.g. a name, canceling is only possible using the button on the steering wheel.

Having possible commands read aloud

The system understands default commands that must be spoken word for word.

You can have the possible commands spoken by the system at any point:

 >Help<

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:


 >Dial name< or >Name<.

The system recognizes digits from zero to nine.

You can say each digit individually or group them into a sequence to accelerate the input.

Example: dialing phone numbers

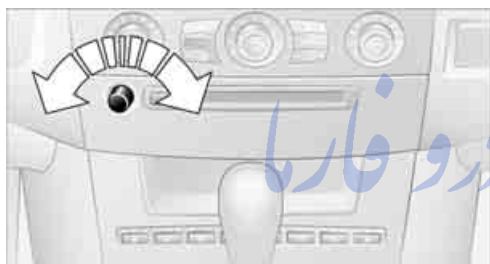
Start the dialog:

Press the  button on the steering wheel.

Command	Response
›Dial number‹	››Please say the number‹‹
e.g. ›123 456 7890‹	Depending on equipment: ››123 456 7890. Continue?‹‹ or ››123 456 7890. And next?‹‹
›Dial‹	››Dialing number‹‹

Adjusting volume

You can adjust the volume for the instructions from the system:



Turn the button during an instruction to select the desired volume.

This volume for the instructions is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.


Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. ›Dial number‹.
The dialog for establishing a telephone connection is opened.
2. Say the phone number.
For telephone calls abroad, say ›Plus‹ and then the country code.
3. ›Dial‹.
The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone number

After the last spoken sequence of digits has been repeated by the system, you can delete this sequence of digits.

-  ›Correct number‹.
The digits are deleted.

The command ›Correct number‹ can be repeated as often as you like.

Deleting input

›Delete‹ is used to delete all the digits entered so far.

Voice phone book

Operating by voice command requires a personal voice phone book.

- ▶ On vehicles with combined drives for audio CDs and navigation DVDs, the entries are automatically adopted from your mobile phone's memory.
- ▶ On vehicles with a single drive, the entries must be entered by voice and are independent of your mobile phone's memory. In this case, it is not possible to use voice command either to call phone numbers stored in the mobile phone or to store new numbers.

Creating and editing voice phone book*

Save entry:

An entry always consists of a name and phone number.

1. ›Save name‹.
The dialog for storing a name is opened.
2. Speak name and repeat entry upon request.
The spoken length of the names in the phone book must not exceed approx. 2 seconds.
3. Say the phone number when prompted.
4. To store the phone number:
›Save‹.

Delete entry:

You can delete any entry from the voice phone book.

1. ›Delete name‹.
The dialog for deleting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

Delete all entries:

›Delete phone book‹ deletes all entries in the phone book.

1. ›Delete phone book‹.
The dialog for deleting phone book is opened.
2. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the repeated prompt with ›Yes‹.

Have entries read aloud and select:

You can have all the entries of your voice phone book read aloud in the order of input and select a certain entry to establish a connection:

1. ›Read phone book‹.
The dialog for reading phone book is opened.
2. ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read aloud.

Selecting an entry


The connection to the phone number of the selected entry is established.

1. ›Dial name‹.
The dialog for selecting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

Redialing

The ›Redial‹ command calls "Redial".

Notes

 The commands in English were available as of this printing. Other languages are currently not available. To operate the mobile phone via the voice command system, refer to page 22. ◀

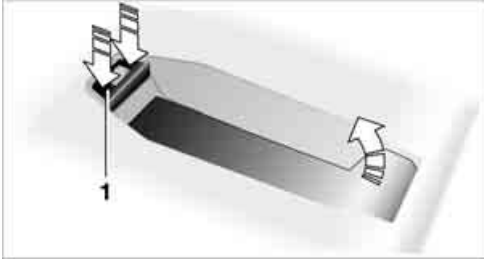
Important for voice commands

For voice commands, keep the following in mind:

- ▶ Issue the commands smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.
- ▶ Keep the doors, windows and glass sunroof closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- ▶ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Mounting/removing snap-in adapter

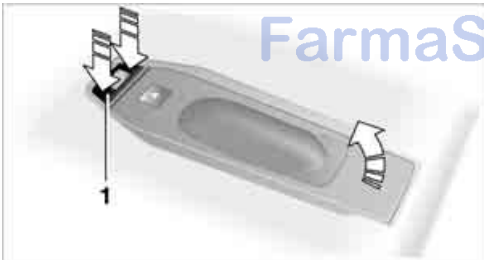
1. Press the area 1 around the button and remove the cover.



2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front and press down until it engages.

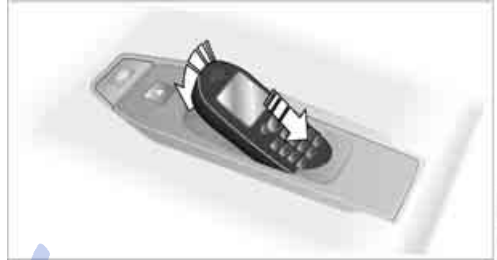


To remove the snap-in adapter:
Press the area 1 around the button.



Inserting mobile phone

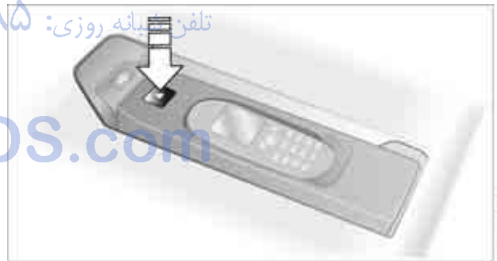
1. Remove the protective cap from the mobile phone's antenna connector if necessary, so that the mobile phone can engage in the snap-in adapter.
2. Push the mobile phone with the keys facing upward toward the electrical connections and press down until it engages.



The mobile phone's battery is charged from radio readiness or with the steering unlocked.

- ▶ To protect the vehicle's batteries, avoid using the phone when the ignition is switched off. ◀

Removing mobile phone



Press button.

TeleService

TeleService supports you when communicating with a BMW center. The built-in car phone can be used to transmit data regarding the service status of your vehicle or regarding legally mandated inspections directly to your BMW center. This is the same data that is also stored for CBS Condition Based Service in the remove control. Your BMW center can then contact you, and you can make an appointment that suits you while you are still on the road. Your advantage here is that your BMW center can prepare in advance for the required maintenance work. The TeleService functions are country-specific: the data regarding the service status of your vehicle or regarding legally mandated inspections is transmitted on a country-specific basis either automatically before they fall due or during your calls to the BMW center. Your BMW center will be glad to provide more detailed information.

BMW Assist

BMW Assist provides you with other services in addition to TeleService. For example, the position data of your vehicle can be transferred to the BMW Assist response center if an emergency call* has been initiated.

Many functions of BMW Assist depend on the individually agreed contract. Data transmission, e.g. of the CBS Condition Based Service, differs from country to country.

The contract of participation with BMW Assist and the activation must be completed before you can use BMW Assist.

When the contract expires, the car phone can be deactivated by a BMW center without having to visit a BMW center. Following deactivation of the car phone, no emergency calls can be made. The car phone can be reactivated after signing a new contract with a BMW center.

You can also use the services of BMW Assist via the Internet. The range of services is continually being expanded.

Requirements

You can use TeleService or BMW Assist when the following requirements are met:

- ▷ The installed car phone is logged on to a cellular telephone network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- ▷ To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position. This can be displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ For TeleService or BMW Assist to be activated and updated, the GPS signal must be available.
- ▷ For BMW Assist: you have applied to your BMW center or BMW Customer Support for BMW Assist.

Enabling TeleService or BMW Assist

For you to be able to use the services of TeleService or BMW Assist, these must be enabled.

Requirements

- ▷ Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
- ▷ Leave radio readiness switched on while connecting to the system.

Enabling

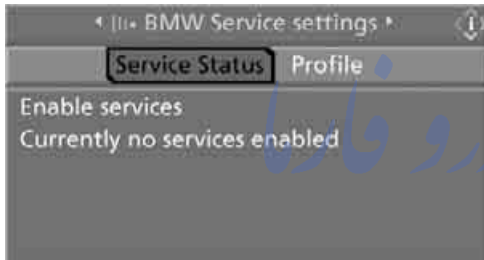
iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.

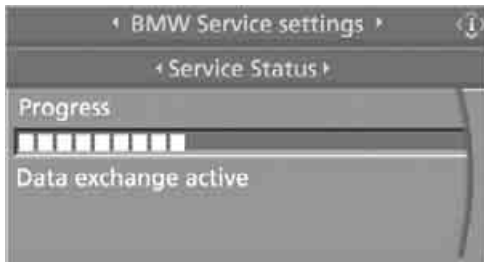
3. Select "Communication settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "BMW Service settings" and press the controller.



5. Select "Service Status" and press the controller.



6. Select "Enable services" and press the controller. TeleService and, if applicable, BMW Assist are enabled; data exchange with the service center starts.



Enabling takes a few minutes. The status is displayed on the Control Display. If you open another menu, the enable process continue to run in the background.

Services offered

The following special features apply for the services of TeleService and BMW Assist:

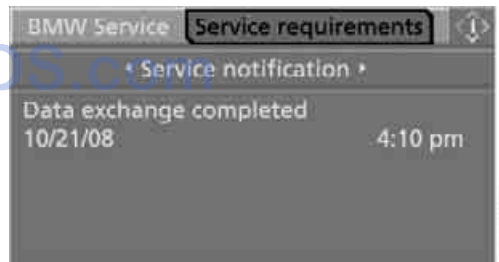
- ▷ The services offered are country-specific.
- ▷ Voice contact is established or data are transferred, depending on the equipment and the country. In some countries, it is possible to do both.
- ▷ The data transferred can be the vehicle data, your current position or the data of the CBS Condition Based Service.

Automatic service notification*

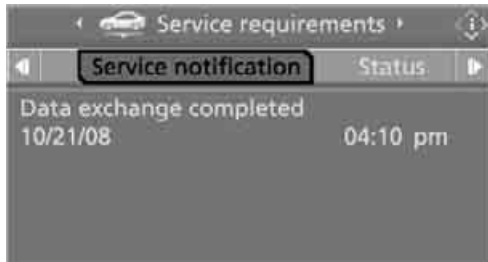
The data on the service status of your vehicle or on legally mandated inspections is transmitted automatically directly to your BMW center prior to the due date. You can check when the BMW center was notified.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

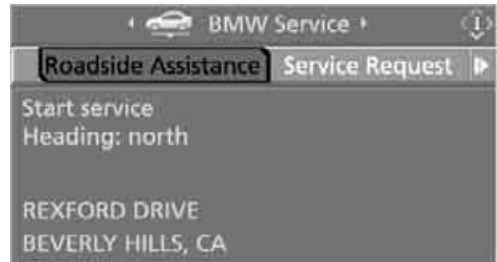
1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Service" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service requirements" and press the controller.



5. Select "Service notification" and press the controller.



5. Select "Roadside Assistance" and press the controller.



Breakdown assistance

You can call Roadside Assistance* of the BMW Group should you require help in the event of a breakdown.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Select "BMW Assist" and press the controller.
4. Select "BMW Service" and press the controller.



If the current position can be determined, the current vehicle location is displayed.

6. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

Contact to Roadside Assistance will be established.

Setting up contact to your BMW center or BMW Customer Relations

You can contact your BMW center, e.g. to arrange a service appointment.

For information related to your vehicle, call the BMW Customer Relations.

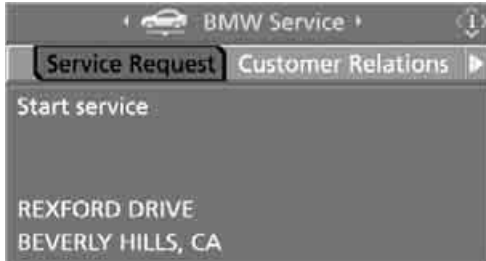
This requires your mobile phone to be logged on in the vehicle.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Service" and press the controller.
4. Select "BMW Service" and press the controller.

5. Select desired BMW service:

- ▷ "Service Request"
- ▷ "Customer Relations"



- 6. Press the controller.
- 7. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

Contact to the desired BMW service will be established.

Adapting TeleService or BMW Assist

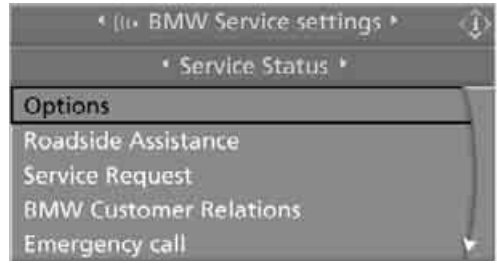
Displaying and updating services

If the offering from TeleService or BMW Assist changes, you will be notified. In this case you should update the services.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Communication settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "BMW Service settings" and press the controller.
5. Select "Service Status" and press the controller.

The current services available from TeleService or BMW Assist are displayed.

6. Select "Options" and press the controller.



7. Select "Update services" and press the controller.

Blocking services*

If you block the services, the connection to BMW Assist is deactivated.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Communication settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "BMW Service settings" and press the controller.
5. Select "Service Status" and press the controller.
6. Select "Options" and press the controller.
7. Select "Terminate services" and press the controller.

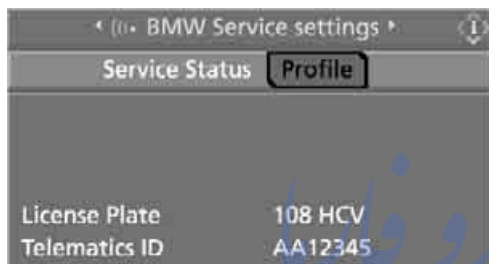
The use of TeleService or BMW Assist is blocked, and the current vehicle position will not be transferred during an emergency call*. To deactivate the blocking function, enabling must be carried out again, refer to page 187. This does not affect the contractual agreements.

Enable TeleService and, if applicable, BMW Assist once again to log on again.

Displaying vehicle data

When TeleService or BMW Assist is activated, the license plate and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle can be displayed.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Communication settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "BMW Service settings" and press the controller.
5. Select "Profile" and press the controller.



To adjust the license plate number, please contact your BMW center.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Mobility


This section helps you maintain your mobility by supplying important information on vital topics including fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance and breakdown assistance.


امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Refueling

 Always switch off the engine before refueling, otherwise no fuel can be filled into the tank and a message is displayed. ◀

 When handling fuel, always observe all applicable precautionary measures and regulations. Never transport reserve fuel containers in the vehicle. These could become leaky and cause an explosion or a fire in an accident. ◀

Fuel filler door



To open and close: press the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

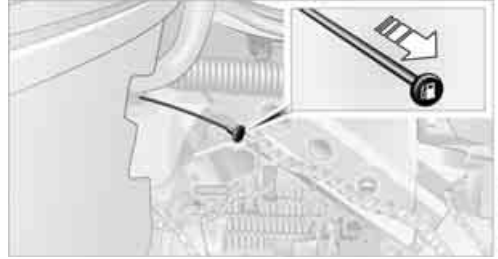
Manual release

If an electrical malfunction should occur, you can unlock the fuel filler door manually.

Sedan

1. In the luggage compartment, raise the floor mat and the cover located beneath it.
2. Open the snap fasteners of the right side panel and take off the side panel.

3. Pull the knob with the gas pump symbol.




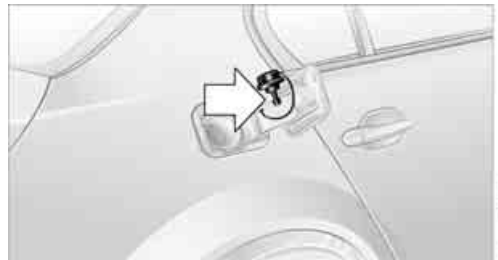
Sports Wagon

1. Unhook the retaining strap*, refer to page 119.
2. Open the right-hand side panel in the cargo area.
3. Pull the knob with the gas pump symbol.



Observe the following when refueling

 When handling fuels always observe any safety guidelines posted at the service station. ◀



Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler door.


When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid raising the filler nozzle during refueling, as otherwise this leads to

- ▶ premature pump shutoff
- ▶ a reduced efficiency of the fuel-vapor recovery system.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Fuel tank capacity


Approx. 18.5 gallons/70 liters, including the reserve capacity of approx. 2.1 gallons/8 liters.

 Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur. ◀


Fuel filler cap

Closing

Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

 Do not jam the strap attached to the fuel filler cap between the fuel filler cap and the vehicle. A message* is displayed if the cap is loose or missing. ◀

Fuel specifications

 Do not use leaded gasoline, otherwise permanent damage to the catalytic converter will result. ◀

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 91

This gasoline is highly recommended.


However, you may also use gasoline with less AKI. The minimum AKI Rating is 87.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures.

This has no effect on the engine life.

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada. Fuels containing up to and including 10% ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8% oxygen by weight, that is, 15% MTBE or 3% methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

 The use of poor-quality fuels may result in drivability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.

Should you encounter drivability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline. Failure to comply with these recommendations may also result in unscheduled maintenance. ◀

درو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Wheels and tires


Tire inflation pressure


Information for your safety

The condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure are crucial not only to the tire's service life, but also to driving comfort and most importantly, driving safety.

Checking pressure


Only check tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure increases.

 Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct it as needed, even on the compact tire*: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. Otherwise driving instability or tire damage, and therefore accidents, can result from incorrect tire inflation pressures. Do not drive with depressurized, i.e. flat tires, except run-flat tires. A flat tire will seriously impair your vehicle's handling and braking response. Attempts to drive on a flat tire can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle. ◀

 After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 90, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 92. ◀

Pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

 The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes and tire brands respectively approved and recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your BMW center. ◀

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressure for your tires, observe the following:


- ▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle
- ▷ Load conditions
- ▷ Maximum allowable driving speed

Tire inflation pressures for speeds up to 100 mph/160 km/h


For normal driving up to 100 mph/160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the column Traveling speeds up to max. 100 mph/160 km/h to achieve optimum driving comfort.

These pressure specifications can be found on the door post when you open the driver's door.





 The permissible top speed for these tire inflation pressures is 100 mph/160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed, otherwise tire damage and accidents may result. ◀

Tire inflation pressures for speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

 In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur. ◀




Observe all national and local maximum speed limits, otherwise violations of the law could occur.

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420			
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
245/45 R 17 95 W				
225/55 R 16 95 H M+S	29/200	33/230	29/200	33/230
245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL			35/240	42/290
225/50 R 17 94 V M+S				
225/50 R 17 94 W	29/200	36/250	29/200	35/240
245/40 R 18 93 W			36/250	44/300
225/50 R 17 94 H M+S				
Front: 245/40 R 18 93 W	29/200	33/230	29/200	33/230
Rear: 275/35 R 18 95 W			36/250	42/290
Front: 245/35 R 19 93 Y XL	30/210	38/260	29/200	33/230
Rear: 275/30 R 19 96 Y XL			35/240	42/290




More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 229.

FarmaSOS.com

525xi/530xi

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h			Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h		
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 17 95 W	29/200	35/240	29/200	33/230	35/240	42/290
245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL						
225/50 R 17 94 V M+S						
225/50 R 17 94 W	30/210	36/250	30/210	36/250	38/260	45/310
225/50 R 17 94 H M+S						
245/40 R 18 93 W	30/210	38/260	30/210	36/250	38/260	45/310
Front: 245/40 R 18 93 W	30/210	35/240	30/210	33/230	38/260	42/290
Rear: 275/35 R 18 95 W						
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 229 .						

530xi Sports Wagon

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h			Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h		
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
225/50 R 17 94 W M+S						
225/50 R 17 94 W						
245/45 R 17 95 W	30/210	38/260	32/220	39/270	38/260	45/310
225/50 R 17 94 H M+S						
245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL						
245/40 R 18 93 Y	32/220	39/270	29/200	36/250	35/240	42/290
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 229 .						

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h			Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h		
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/40 R 18 93 Y	30/210	38/260	29/200	35/240	33/230	41/280
245/45 R 17 95 W	29/200	35/240	32/220	38/260	36/250	44/300
245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL						
225/50 R 17 94 V M+S						
225/50 R 17 94 W	29/200	36/250	33/230	39/270	38/260	45/310
225/50 R 17 94 H M+S						
Front: 245/40 R 18 93 Y	30/210	35/240	29/200	32/220	33/230	38/260
Rear: 275/35 R 18 95 Y						
Front: 245/35 R 19 93 Y XL	35/240	39/270	33/230	38/260	38/260	44/300
Rear: 275/30 R 19 96 Y XL						

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page [229](#).

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

e.g. 225/50 R 17 94 W

Nominal width in mm ————

Aspect ratio in % ————

Belted construction – radial ————

Rim diameter in inches ————

Carrying capacity ID-code ————

(not in ZR tires)

Speed code letter ————

(in ZR tires before the R)

Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph/160 km/h

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

e.g. DOT xxxx xxx 0806

Manufacturer code ————

for tire make

Tire size and tire design ————

Tire age ————

Tire age

The manufacturing date of tires is contained in the tire coding: DOT... 0806 indicates that the tire was manufactured in week 8 of 2006.

BMW recommends that you replace all tires after 6 years at most, even if some tires may last for 10 years.


Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

 All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. ◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.



The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics. ◀

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. ◀

RSC – run-flat tires

You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to page 201.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.

These have better winter properties than summer tires.

XL

Indicates specially reinforced tires.

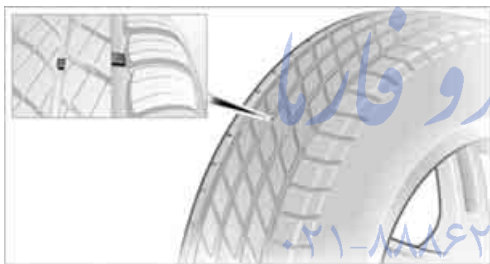
Tire condition

Inspect your tires frequently for tread wear, signs of damage and for foreign objects lodged in the tread. Check the tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 0.12 in/3 mm, although, for example, European legislation only specifies a minimum tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 0.12 in/3 mm there is an increased risk of high-speed hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of water are present on the road surface.

When winter tires wear down past a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, they become perceptibly less suitable for winter conditions. For the sake of safety, new tires should be installed.




Wear indicators at the tread-groove base, refer to arrow, are distributed over the tire's circumference and are marked on the side of the tire with TWI – Tread Wear Indicator. If the tire tread has been driven down to the wear indicators, a tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm has been reached.

Wheel/tire damage

Please note that low-profile tires cause wheels, tires and suspension parts to be more susceptible to road hazards and consequential damages.

Unusual vibrations encountered during normal vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or some other vehicle defect. This can, for example, be caused by driving over curbs. These kinds of problems may also be signaled by other changes in vehicle response, such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

 In these cases, reduce speed immediately and have wheels and tires thoroughly checked. To do so, drive carefully to the nearest BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If necessary, have the vehicle towed there. Tire damage can be extremely dangerous for vehicle occupants and other road users. ◀

Run-flat tires*




You will recognize run-flat tires by the circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire.

Run-flat tires consist of partially self-contained tires and special rims. The sidewall reinforcement ensures that the tire retains some residual safety in the event of pressure drop and driving remains possible to a restricted degree.


To continue driving with a damaged tire:

- ▶ With Flat Tire Monitor, refer to Indication of a flat tire page [90](#)
- ▶ With Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to Message with low tire inflation pressure page [92](#)


New wheels and tires

 Have new wheels and tires installed only by your BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced. ◀

Retreaded tires

 BMW does not recommend that you use retreaded tires, as driving safety may be impaired. The causes for this include the possibly different tire casing structures and the often wide variations in their age, which can result in a limited service life. ◀

The right wheels and tires

 BMW recommends that you use only wheel and tire combinations that BMW has tested and approved for your particular vehicle. Variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances mean that even wheels and tires with identical official size ratings could actually have different dimensions than the approved units – these differences could lead to body contact, and with it the risk of severe accidents. If non-approved wheels and tires are used, BMW cannot evaluate their suitability, and therefore cannot be held liable for driving safety. ◀

You can inquire about the right wheel/tire combination at your BMW center.

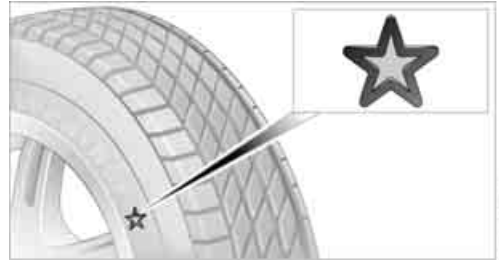
The correct wheel/tire combination also affects various systems whose function would otherwise be impaired, e.g. ABS, DSC or xDrive.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Wheels with electronics for TPM Tire Pressure Monitor

When mounting new tires or converting from summer to winter tires or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics, as otherwise the Tire Pressure Monitor cannot detect a flat tire, refer to page 91. Your BMW center will be happy to advise you on this subject.

Recommended tire brands




Certain tire makes are recommended by BMW depending on the tire size. You can recognize these from the clearly visible BMW marking on the tire sidewall.

When used properly, these tires comply with the most demanding standards for safety and vehicle response.

Run-flat tires


When mounting new tires, or changing from summer to winter tires or vice versa, use run-flat tires for your own safety. In addition, no spare tire is available in case of a flat tire. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.

 For safety reasons, BMW recommends that you do not have damaged run-flat tires repaired; they should be replaced. ◀

Special characteristics of winter tires

BMW recommends winter tires for use in cold winter driving conditions. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Pay attention to speed

 Always observe the maximum permissible speed for the winter tires, otherwise tire damage may occur, which can result in accidents. ◀

Storage

Always store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil,


grease and fuels. Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Snow chains*

BMW only tests certain fine-link snow chains, classifies them as road-safe and recommends them. Consult your BMW center for more information.

Use is only permissible in pairs on the rear wheels.

Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h with the chains mounted.

 After mounting snow chains, do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor, otherwise incorrect displays can occur.

When driving with snow chains, it may be practical to briefly activate DTC, refer to page 87. ◀

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Under the hood

⚠ Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the required professional technical training. If you do not know what repair procedures to follow, have work on your vehicle done only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. ◀

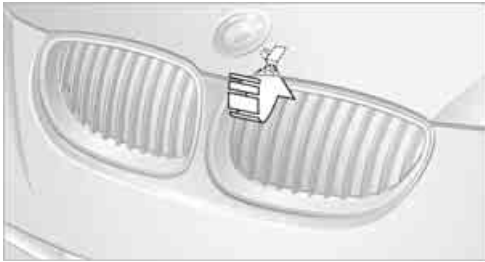
Hood

Releasing



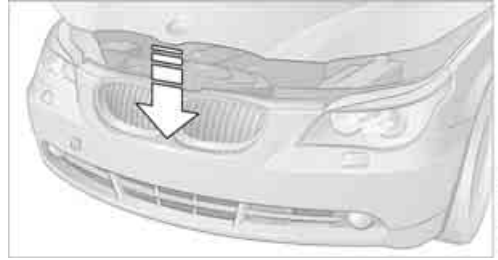
Pull lever.

Opening



Press the release handle and open the hood.

Closing



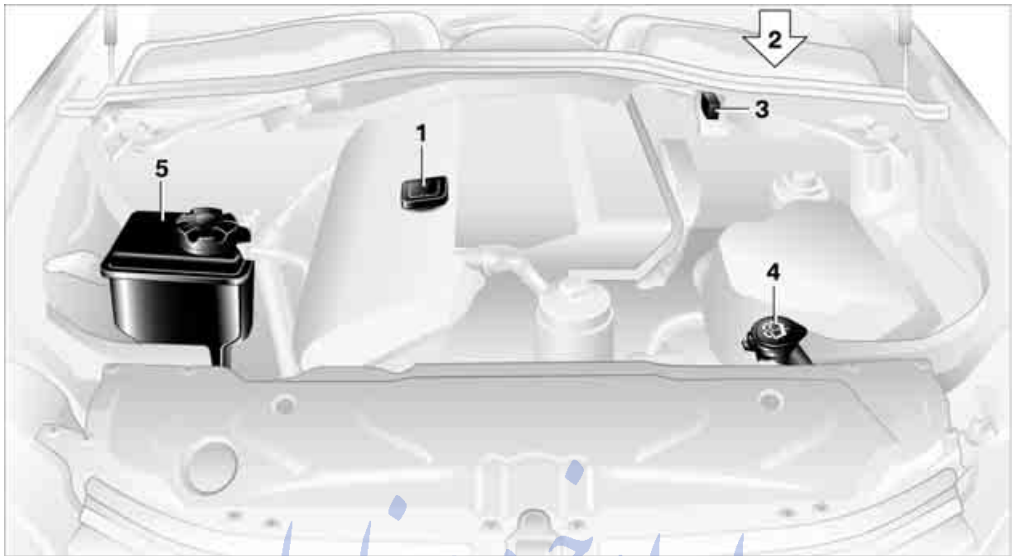
Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

⚠ Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear, otherwise injuries may result.

If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving your vehicle, you should stop at once and close it securely. ◀

FarmaSOS.com

Engine compartment



- 1 Filler neck for engine oil, refer to Adding engine oil
- 2 Brake fluid reservoir, located beneath the microfilter cover
- 3 Starting-aid terminal, refer to page 220
- 4 Washer fluid reservoir of the headlamp and windshield cleaning systems, refer to page 66
- 5 Expansion tank for coolant, refer to page 207

Engine oil

The engine oil consumption is dependent on driving style and driving conditions.

Checking engine oil level

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic oil level check.

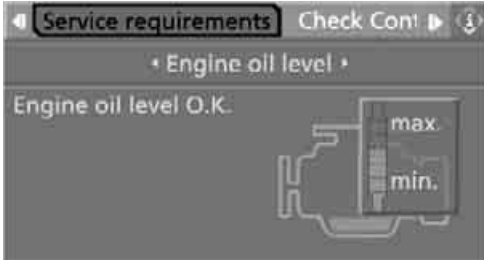
The condition for the most accurate indication of the oil level possible is measurement with the engine at operating temperature, i.e. following an uninterrupted drive of at least 6 miles/10 km. You can display the oil level on the Control Display while driving or when stopped on a level surface with the engine running.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Service" and press the controller.



- Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



- Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until "Engine oil level" is selected and press the controller. The oil level is displayed.

Possible messages

- ▷ "Engine oil level O.K."
- ▷ "No measured value available: Updating engine oil level measurement...": Engine oil level is being measured. This process can take approx. 3 minutes when stopped on a level surface and approx. 5 minutes while driving.
- ▷ "Oil level at the minimum! Refill with 1 quart of engine oil.": Add 1 US quart/liter of engine oil at the next opportunity.
- ▷ "Engine oil level too high":
 - ⚠ Have the vehicle checked immediately, otherwise engine damage may result if too much oil has been added. ◀
- ▷ "Please observe recalculated service interval for engine oil": Do not add engine oil. Continued driving is possible. To do this, observe the recalculated remaining mileage until the next oil change service, refer to page 209. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil



Do not add 1 US quart/1 liter of oil until a corresponding message is shown on the Control Display.

⚠ Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km, otherwise the engine could be damaged. ◀

⚠ Continuous exposure to used oil has caused cancer in laboratory testing. For this reason, any skin areas that come into contact with oil should be thoroughly washed with soap and water. Keep oil, grease etc. out of reach of children and observe the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks. ◀

Oil change

Have oil changed only at your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.


Approved engine oils

The quality of the engine oil selected has critical significance for the operation and service life of an engine. BMW continuously approves specific oils after confirming their suitability for use in its vehicles with extensive testing.

⚠ Do not use oil additives, as these may result in engine damage. ◀

Only use approved BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil.

If BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil is unavailable, you can add small quantities of other synthetic oils between oil changes. Only use oils of the specification API SH or higher.


 Your BMW center will be happy to answer detailed questions on BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil or approved synthetic oils. ◀

You can also call BMW of North America at 1-800-831-1117 or visit the website at www.bmwusa.com to obtain this information.

Viscosity grades


Viscosity is a measure of an oil's flow rating and is specified in SAE grades.

The choice of the right SAE grade is based on the climatic conditions in the region in which you normally drive your BMW.


 Approved oils belong to the SAE grades 5W-40 and 5W-30. ◀


These oils can be used for driving at all outside temperatures.

Coolant

 Do not add coolant to the cooling system when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant can cause burns. ◀

Coolant is comprised of water and coolant additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Ask your BMW center for suitable additives.

 Only use suitable additives, otherwise engine damage may result. The additives present a health hazard; observe the instructions on the containers. ◀

 Comply with the appropriate environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant additives. ◀

Checking coolant level

1. The engine must be at ambient temperature.
2. Turn the cap of the expansion tank counterclockwise to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.

3. The coolant level is correct when the coolant level is between the MIN and MAX marks, refer to the diagram adjacent to the filler neck.




4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level – do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.
6. Have the reason for the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.


Brake system


Malfunctions

Brake fluid

 The warning lamp lights red up in spite of the handbrake being released; a message is shown on the Control Display: stop immediately.

The brake fluid in the reservoir has fallen to below the minimum level. At the same time, a considerably longer brake pedal travel may be noticeable. Have the system thoroughly checked.

 Display of the previously described malfunction on Canadian models.

 When you continue driving, an increased brake pedal path can be necessary, and significantly longer braking distances might be required. Please adapt your driving style accordingly. ◀

ایراد خودرو فارما

تایم شماره ۸۵۸

Farmasoft.com

Brake pads



The warning lamp lights red up in spite of the handbrake being released; a message is shown on the Control Display. The brake pads have reached their minimum pad thickness. Have brake pads replaced immediately.



Display of the previously described malfunction on Canadian models.



For your own safety: use only brake pads that BMW has approved for the corresponding vehicle model. As BMW cannot assess the suitability of other brake pads for use on your vehicle, we are unable to assume continued responsibility for the vehicle's operating safety if non-approved pads are installed. ◀

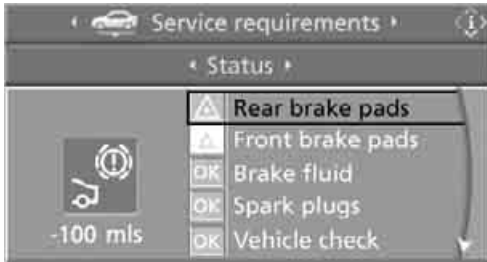
امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Maintenance

BMW maintenance system



The BMW maintenance system supports the preservation of the traffic and operating safety of your BMW. The service schedule also includes operations related to the vehicle's comfort and convenience features, such as replacement of the filters for the inside air. The ultimate objective is to ensure economical maintenance by providing the ideal service for your vehicle.

Should the day come when you decide to sell your BMW, a complete dealer service history will prove to be an asset of inestimable value.

CBS Condition Based Service

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your BMW into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.


You can set the Control Display to show remaining distances and times of selected maintenance intervals and legally mandated deadlines, refer to page 77:

- ▷ Engine oil
- ▷ Brake pads, front and rear separately
- ▷ Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter
- ▷ Brake fluid
- ▷ Spark plugs

- ▷ Vehicle check
- ▷ Legally mandated inspections depending on local regulations


Service data in remote control

Your vehicle stores the information required maintenance continuously in the remote control during driving. After accessing the data stored in the remote control, your BMW Service Advisor can suggest precisely the right array of service procedures for your own individual vehicle. You should therefore hand over the remote control you last used to drive to the BMW Service Advisor when you take your vehicle in for service.

 Make sure the date is always set correctly, refer to page 83, as otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured. ◀

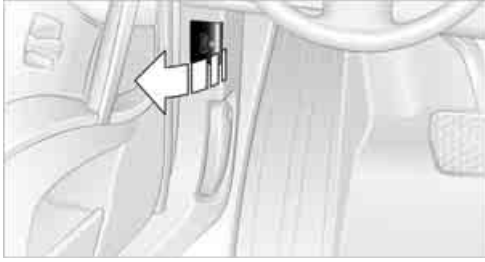
Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

 BMW recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your BMW center.

Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance. ◀

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnostics interface



Components which are decisive for the exhaust-gas composition can be checked via the OBD socket with a device.

This socket is located to the left on the driver's side, on the underside of the instrument panel under a cover.

Exhaust-gas values




The warning lamp lights up. The exhaust-gas values worsen. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

The lamp flashes under certain conditions. This is a sign of excessive misfiring of the engine. In this case you should reduce speed and drive to the nearest BMW center as soon as possible. Heavy engine misfiring led to serious damage to the emission-relevant components, especially the catalytic converter, within a short time.

 If the fuel filler cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system can close when fuel vapor escapes. Then a display light up. If the cap is then tightened, the display will go out within a few days. ◀

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or several measuring and diagnosis modules, or with a device for recording or transmitting certain vehicle data or information. If you have also signed a contract of participation for BMW Assist, certain vehicle data can be transmitted or recorded to enable corresponding services.

Care

Important information on the care and maintenance of your BMW is contained in the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Replacing components

Onboard toolkit

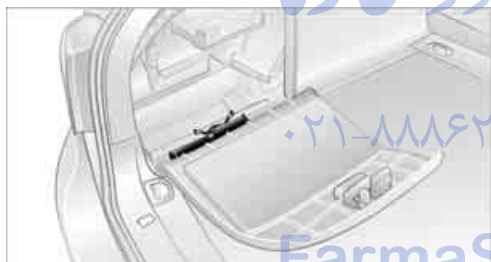
Sedan



The onboard toolkit is located in the luggage compartment lid.

Loosen the wing nut to open.

Sports Wagon



The onboard toolkit is located in the left side panel of the cargo area.

Wiper blade replacement

Front



1. Fold the wiper arm out and grasp firmly.
2. Press the safety tabs together while sliding the wiper blade toward the front to disengage it.
3. Mount the new wiper blade and slide in until it is heard to engage.

Rear*



1. Lift off the wiper arm completely and pull off the wiper blade, refer to arrow.
2. Mount the new wiper blade and press on until it is heard to engage.

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety. You must be duly diligent in replacing them. BMW recommends having your BMW center perform any work that you do not feel competent to perform yourself or that is not described here.

▷ Never touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean cloth, napkin, etc., or hold the bulb by its metal socket. ◀

A selection of replacement bulbs is available at your BMW center.

⚠ Whenever you perform any work on the electrical system, turn off the consumers involved to prevent short circuits from occurring. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer. ◀

For care and maintenance of the headlamps, please follow the instructions in the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure.

▷ For bulbs for which changing is not described, and for checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center. ◀

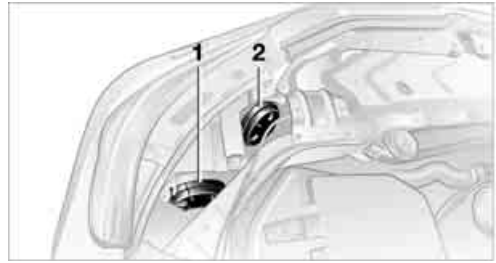
Light-emitting diodes LEDs

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light source for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

⚠ Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours, as irritation of the retina could result. ◀

Halogen headlamps

The illustration shows the left-hand side of the engine compartment.



- 1 Cover cap for low beams
- 2 Cover cap for high beams

Turn the cover cap to the left and remove.

⚠ Always wear gloves and eye protection – the atmosphere within the H7 bulb is pressurized. Otherwise there is a danger of injuries if the bulb is accidentally damaged during replacement. ◀

Low beams

H7 bulb, 55 watts

1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.



2. Remove and replace the bulb.

High beams

H7 bulb, 55 watts

1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.



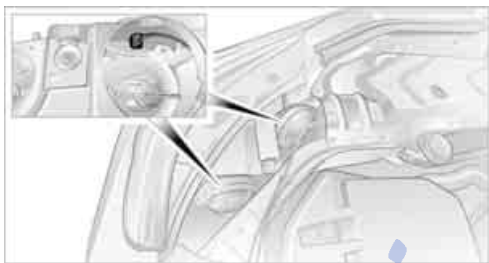
2. Remove and replace the bulb.

Parking and roadside parking lamps

Bulb 5 watts, W 5 W

One bulb each is located above the low beams and high beams.

1. Turn the cover cap for low beams or high beams to the left and remove.
2. Pull out the bulb holder.



3. Remove and replace the bulb.

Xenon lamps*

The service life of these bulbs is very long and the probability of a failure is very low, provided that they are not switched on and off an unusual number of times. If one of these bulbs should nevertheless fail, it is possible to continue driving with great caution using the fog lamps, provided traffic laws in your area do not prohibit this.

⚠ Have work on the Xenon lighting system performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is a danger of fatal injuries when work is carried out improperly. ◀

Parking and roadside parking lamps

In the event of a malfunction, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Turn signals, front

Bulb 21 watts, PY 21 W

1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.



2. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

Side-mounted turn signals

Bulb 5 watts, W 5 W

1. Press back against the front edge of the light with the tip of your finger, then pivot it out.



2. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.
3. Remove the bulb for replacement.

Side marker lamps, front and rear

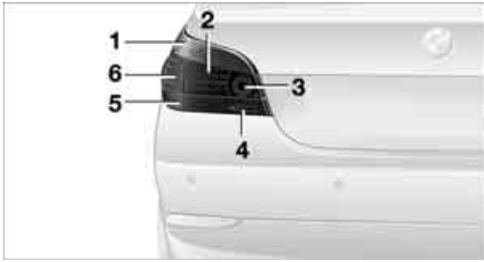
To replace, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Tail lamps

Sedan

- ▷ Turn signals: bulb 21 watts, PY 21 W
- ▷ Backup lamps: bulb 16 watts, W 16 W

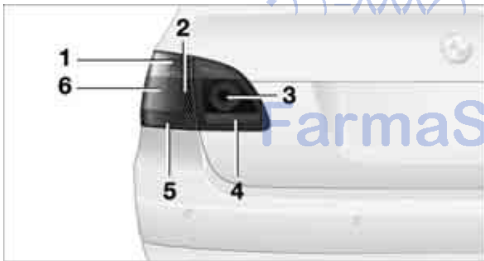
- ▷ Other lamps: bulb 21 watts, P 21 W



- 1 Turn signal
- 2 Tail lamp and brake lamp
- 3 Tail lamp and brake lamp
- 4 Backup lamp
- 5 Reflector
- 6 Roadside parking lamp, tail lamp and brake lamp

Sports Wagon

- ▷ Turn signals: bulb 21 watts, PY 21 W
- ▷ Backup lamp and brake lamp **3**: bulb 16 watts, W 16 W
- ▷ Other lamps: bulb 21 watts, P 21 W



- 1 Turn signal
- 2 Tail lamp and brake lamp
- 3 Brake lamp
- 4 Backup lamp
- 5 Reflector
- 6 Roadside parking lamp, tail lamp and brake lamp

Center brake lamp

This lamp uses LED technology for operation. In the event of a malfunction, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

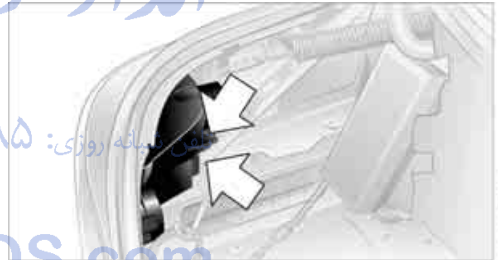
Fender-mounted lamps

Sedan

The illustration shows the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

All the bulbs are integrated into a central bulb fitting.

1. Lift up floor mat.
2. Undo the quick-release fasteners of the side panel and pull out the panel.
3. Press together the two clips at the top and bottom on the bulb fitting and remove the bulb fitting.



4. Backup lamps:
Remove and replace the bulb.
Other lamps:
Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

Sports Wagon

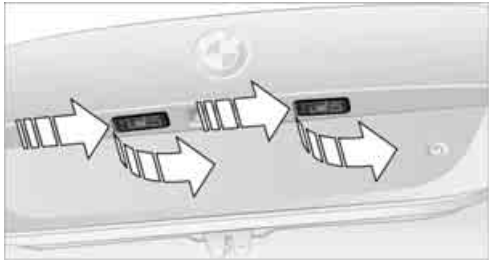
1. Right side: unhook the retaining strap*, refer to page 119.
2. Open the side panel.
3. Turn the bulb socket to the left and remove.
4. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

Lamps in luggage compartment lid

License plate lamp

Bulb 5 watts, C 5 W

1. Insert screwdriver into the slot and press to the right, refer to arrows. This releases the lamp.



2. Remove the lamp and replace the bulb.

Sports Wagon: Backup lamp

In the event of a malfunction, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Changing wheels

⚠ Safety precautions in the event of a flat tire or wheel change: park the vehicle as far as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning flashers. Lock the steering wheel in straight-ahead setting of the wheels. Apply the handbrake and engage first gear, reverse gear or selector lever position P.

Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.

If a warning triangle* or portable hazard warning lamp is required, set it up on the roadside at an appropriate distance from the rear of the vehicle. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.

Change the wheel only on a level, firm surface which is not slippery. The vehicle or the jack could slip to the side if you attempt to raise the vehicle on a soft or slippery surface such as snow, ice, tiles, etc.

Position the jack on a firm support surface.

Do not use a wooden block or similar object as a support base for the jack, as this would prevent it from extending to its full support height and reduce its load-carrying capacity.

To avoid serious or fatal injury: never lie under the vehicle, and never start the engine while it is supported by the jack. ◀

What you will need

To avoid rattling noises later on, note the positions of the tools before removing them, then return them to their initial positions after completing work.



- 1 Chock*
- 2 Vehicle jack*
- 3 Lug wrench*

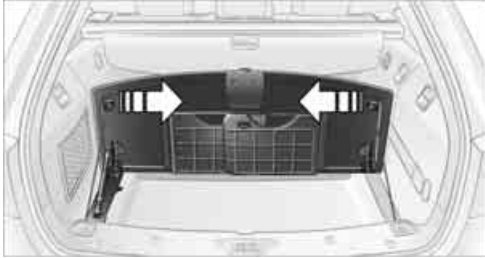
The tools are located in the mount under the floor mat or floor panel flap.

1. Lift up floor mat or floor panel flap and cover located beneath it.
2. Take out the required tools.
3. After using the tools, return them to the storage space.

▶ With run-flat tires, no tools are provided for wheel changes. They can be purchased as accessories at your BMW center. ◀

Sports Wagon: removing and installing floor panel flap of storage area package

1. Unhook the roll-up cover at the rear.
2. Raise the floor panel flap.
3. Unhook the two catch straps at the top.



4. Unlock the gas spring strut, refer to arrow, and remove.



5. Fold over the floor panel flap toward the front to release it and remove.



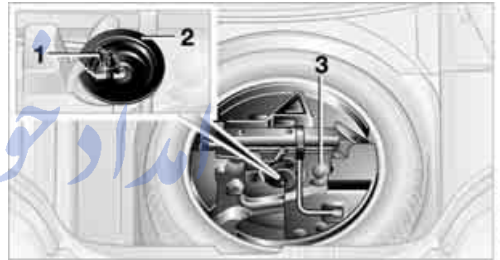
6. Open the front floor panel flap.
7. Swing up the spare tire cover and hook the hooks into the upper frame of the tailgate opening.

8. Take out the cross support upward.



When installing the floor panel flap, proceed in the reverse order and press down the hinge covers.

Compact wheel*



1. Unscrew the wing nut 1.
2. Remove the washer 2 laterally.
3. Take out the tool mounts 3.
4. Remove the compact wheel.


Preparing wheel change

1. Observe the safety precautions above.
2. Prevent the vehicle from rolling: Place the chock behind the front wheel on the other side of the vehicle, or on inclines, in front of this wheel. On a steep grade, take other steps to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
3. Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking up vehicle

1. Position the vehicle jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel so that the entire sur-

face of the jack base rests on the ground perpendicularly beneath the jacking point.

 The vehicle jack is designed for changing wheels only. Do not attempt to raise another vehicle model with it or to raise any load of any kind. To do so could cause accidents and personal injury. ◀

2. Guide the jack head into the rectangular recess of the jacking point when cranking up, refer to illustration detail.




3. Jack the vehicle up until the wheel you are changing is raised from the ground.

Mounting a wheel


1. Unscrew the lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Remove accumulations of mud or dirt from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub. Also clean the lug bolts.
3. Position the new wheel or compact wheel. Secure the wheel by screwing at least two lug bolts into opposite bolt holes. When you mount wheels other than Genuine BMW light-alloy wheels, different lug bolts may also be required.
4. Screw in the remaining lug bolts. Tighten all the bolts securely in a diagonal pattern.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack from beneath the vehicle.

After mounting

1. Tighten the lug bolts in a diagonal pattern.

 To ensure safety, always have the lug bolts checked with a calibrated torque wrench as soon as possible to ensure that they are tightened to the


specified torque. The tightening torque is 88.5 lb ft/120 Nm. ◀

2. When stowing the wheel and tools in the vehicle, execute these steps in the reverse order.
3. Check and correct the tire inflation pressure at the earliest opportunity.
 Protect valve stems and valve stem seal caps against dirt and contamination. Dirt in valve stems is a frequent source of gradual air loss. ◀
4. Initialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 90, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 92.
5. Replace the damaged tire as soon as possible and have the new wheel/tire balanced.

Driving with compact wheel

Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

The driving characteristics change, for example reduced track stability on braking, extended braking distance, and altered self-steering characteristics in the limit range. In conjunction with winter tires, these characteristics are more pronounced.

 Only one compact wheel may be mounted. You should re-equip with wheels and tires of the original size as quickly as possible. ◀

Vehicle battery

Battery care

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate. Your BMW center will be glad to advise in all matters concerning the battery.

Charging battery

Only charge the battery in the vehicle via the terminals in the engine compartment with the engine off. Connections, refer to Jump starting on page 220.

Disposal



Have old batteries disposed of by your BMW center or hand them in to a recycling center. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always restrain the battery to prevent it from tipping over during transport. ◀

Power failure

After a temporary power loss, the functioning of some equipment may be limited and require reinitialization. Individual settings are also lost and must be updated:

- ▷ Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory
The positions must be stored again, refer to page 47.
- ▷ Time and Date
The values must be updated, refer to page 82.
- ▷ Radio
Stations must be stored again if necessary, refer to page 158.
- ▷ Navigation system
Wait until the system starts, refer to page 149.

Fuses



Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating, as this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle. ◀

Sedan

Spare fuses, plastic tweezers and fuse allocation diagram are located in the compartment for the onboard tool kit, refer to page 211.

Sports Wagon

Reserve fuses and a pair of plastic tweezers are contained in the onboard tool kit, refer to page 211. A fuse allocation diagram is located in the cargo area behind the right-hand side panel.

In glove compartment

1. Release both quick-release fasteners.



2. Fold the cover forward or remove.

Sedan: in luggage compartment

1. Lift up floor mat.
2. Release the quick-release fastener of the right side panel and pull out the panel.



Sports Wagon: in cargo area



1. Unhook the retaining strap*, refer to page 119.
2. Open the right-hand side panel.

Giving and receiving assistance

Emergency call

Conditions for an emergency call:

- ▶ Full preparation package mobile phone.
With this equipment, an emergency call is still possible when no mobile phone is logged on in the vehicle.
- ▶ BMW Assist is enabled.
Enabling BMW Assist, refer to page 187.
- ▶ Radio readiness is activated.
- ▶ The car phone is logged on to a mobile communications network.
- ▶ The emergency call system is operable.

When the contract of participation with BMW Assist expires, the car phone can be deactivated by a BMW center without having to visit a workshop. Following deactivation of the car phone, no emergency calls can be made. The car phone can be reactivated after signing a new contract with a BMW center.

Initiating an emergency call

1. Briefly press protective cover to open.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.



2. Press the button for at least 2 seconds.
The LED in the button lights up. As soon as the voice connection to the BMW Assist response center has been established, the LED flashes.

If conditions allow, remain in the vehicle until the connection has been established. You will then be able to provide a detailed description of the situation.

If the current position of your vehicle can be determined, it will be forwarded to the BMW Assist response center.

If the LED flashes, but you are unable to hear the BMW Assist response center through the hands-free system, this could indicate, for instance, that the hands-free system is no longer operational. However, you may then still be audible for the response center.

Under certain conditions, an emergency call is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. The automatic emergency call is not affected by the button being pressed.



For technical reasons, the emergency call cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions. ◀

Warning triangle*

The warning triangle is located in the luggage compartment lid/tailgate.

Sedan



Loosen the wing nut to open.

Sports Wagon



Release the two quick-release fasteners and fold down the trim piece.

First-aid kit*

Some of the articles contained in the first-aid kit have a limited service life. Therefore, check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace the contents concerned in good time if necessary.

Sedan



The first-aid kit is located in the luggage compartment lid.

Loosen the wing nut to open.

Sports Wagon



The first-aid kit is located in the right side panel of the cargo area. Before opening the side panel, pull the retaining strap* toward the rear by its rear end and unhook it.

Roadside Assistance*


The Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group offers you assistance in the event of a breakdown around the clock, including on weekends and public holidays.

The phone numbers of the Roadside Assistance in your home country can be found in the Contact brochure.

With BMW Assist or TeleService, you can contact the Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group for assistance in the event of a breakdown directly via iDrive, refer to page 189.


Jump starting

When your battery is discharged, you can use two jumper cables to start your BMW with power from the battery in a second vehicle. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Use only jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.


 To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries. ◀

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 Volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical systems and components in both vehicles.

 There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles, otherwise there is a danger of shorting. ◀

Connecting jumper cables

 To avoid personal injury from sparks, follow this sequence when connecting jumper cables. ◀

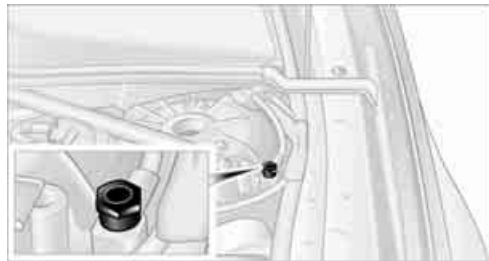
In your BMW, the so-called auxiliary terminal for jump starting in the engine compartment serves as a positive terminal for the battery, also refer to engine compartment overview on page 205. The cover cap is marked with a +.

1. Fold open the cover of the BMW starting-aid terminal. To do so, pull the tab.



2. Attach one end of the jumper cable plus/+ to the positive terminal of the battery or a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery or to a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one end of the jumper cable minus/- to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the assisting vehicle.

Your BMW has a special nut as body ground or negative terminal.




5. Attach the second end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.


Starting engine


1. Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and allow it to run at idle for several minutes at slightly increased speed.
2. Start the engine on the other vehicle in the usual way.
If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the connection sequence.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

 Never use spray fluids to start the engine. ◀

Tow-starting and towing

 Observe applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing. ◀

 Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed. ◀

Using tow fitting


The screw-on tow-fitting must always be carried in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

Sedan:

It is located in the toolkit in the luggage compartment lid, refer to page 211.

Sports Wagon:

It is located in the toolkit behind the left side panel in the cargo area, refer to page 211.

 Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in. Use the tow fitting for towing only on roads. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur. ◀

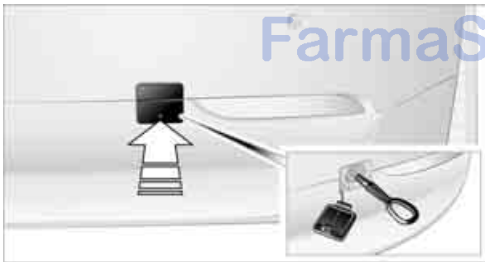
Access to screw thread

Rectangular cover panel in bumper: press on the arrow symbol on the cover panel.


Front



Rear



Being towed

 Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 58, otherwise the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals and windshield wipers would not be available. If the vehicle electrical system fails, do not tow-start or tow the vehicle. The electric steering-wheel lock cannot be unlocked and the vehicle cannot be steered. For information on jump starting, refer

to page 220. There is no power assistance with the engine stopped. This then requires increased effort for braking and steering. Active steering is deactivated and larger steering wheel movements are required. ◀

Switch on the hazard warning flashers depending on the local regulations. If the electrical system fails, mark the vehicle to be towed, e.g. with a sign or warning triangle in the rear window.


Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Automatic transmission

Selector lever in position N.


Changing selector lever position, refer to Deactivating selector lever interlock page 64.

 Do not exceed a towing speed of 45 mph / 70 km/h and a towing distance of 90 miles / 150 km, otherwise the automatic transmission may be damaged. ◀

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission


Engage selector lever position N with the ignition switched on.

Towing methods

 Do not lift vehicle by tow fitting or body and chassis parts, otherwise damage may result. ◀

In some countries, towing with tow bars or ropes in public traffic is not permitted. Familiarize yourself with the regulations on towing in the respective country.

With tow bar

 The towing vehicle may not be lighter than the vehicle to be towed, otherwise it will not be possible to reliably control vehicle response. ◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.

- ▷ When mounted at an angle, the tow bar will exert lateral forces, tending to push the vehicle sideways.

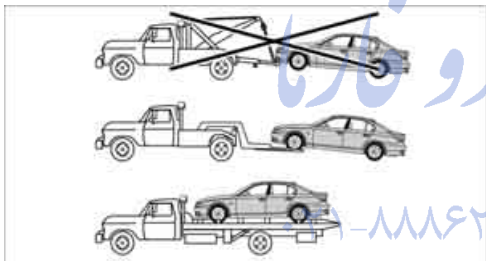
! Only attach the tow bar to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage. ◀

With tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

! To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps. Only attach tow ropes to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage. ◀

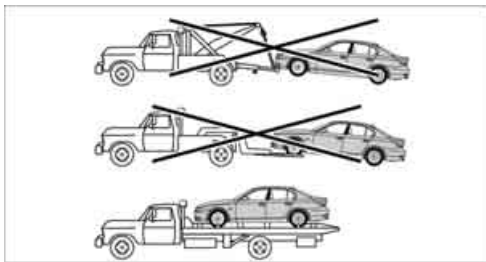
With tow truck



Have the BMW transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

With tow truck for 525xi, 530xi

! Do not tow the BMW with xDrive with the front or rear axle raised individually, otherwise the wheels may block and the transfer case may be damaged. ◀



The BMW may only be transported on a flat bed.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle if possible, but instead start the engine by means of jump starting, refer to page 220. With a catalytic converter, tow-starting should only be carried out with the engine cold, and with automatic transmissions, the engine cannot be started by tow-starting.

! If the electrical system fails, do not tow-start or tow the vehicle, as otherwise the electric steering-wheel lock cannot be unlocked and the vehicle cannot be steered. ◀

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with country-specific regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 58.
3. Shift into 3rd gear. For information on SMG, see below.
4. Tow-start with the clutch completely depressed and slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch again completely.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission

1. Tow-start in selector lever position N.
2. Select the Sequential mode. The correct gear will be selected and engaged automatically.

▷ Do not activate the HDC Hill Descent Control of the 525xi, 530 xi during tow-starting, refer to page 88. ◀



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Reference

This chapter contains the technical data, the short commands of the voice command system, and the index that will direct you as quickly as possible to the information you are looking for.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Technical data

Engine data

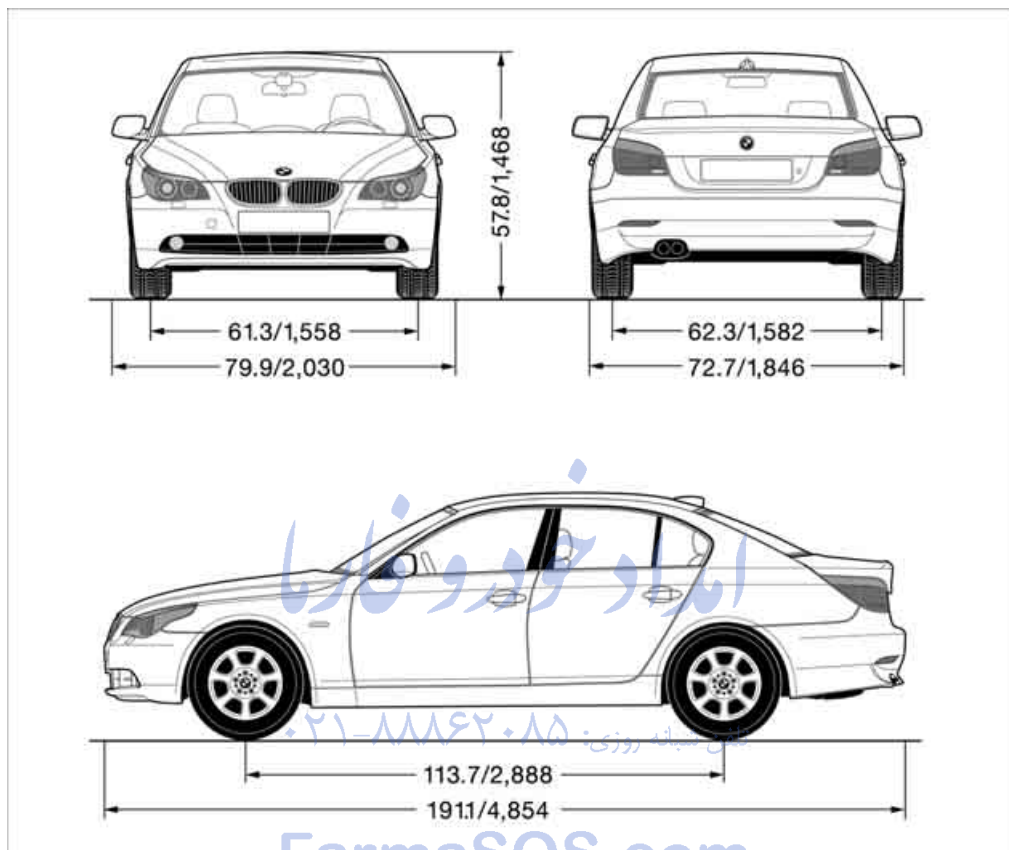
		525i/xi	530i/xi	550i
Displacement	cu in/cm ³	182.8/2,996	182.8/2,996	292.8/4,799
No. of cylinders		6	6	8
Maximum output	hp	215	255	360
at engine speed	rpm	6,250	6,600	6,300
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	185/251	220/298	360/488
at engine speed	rpm	2,750	2,750	3,400

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Dimensions

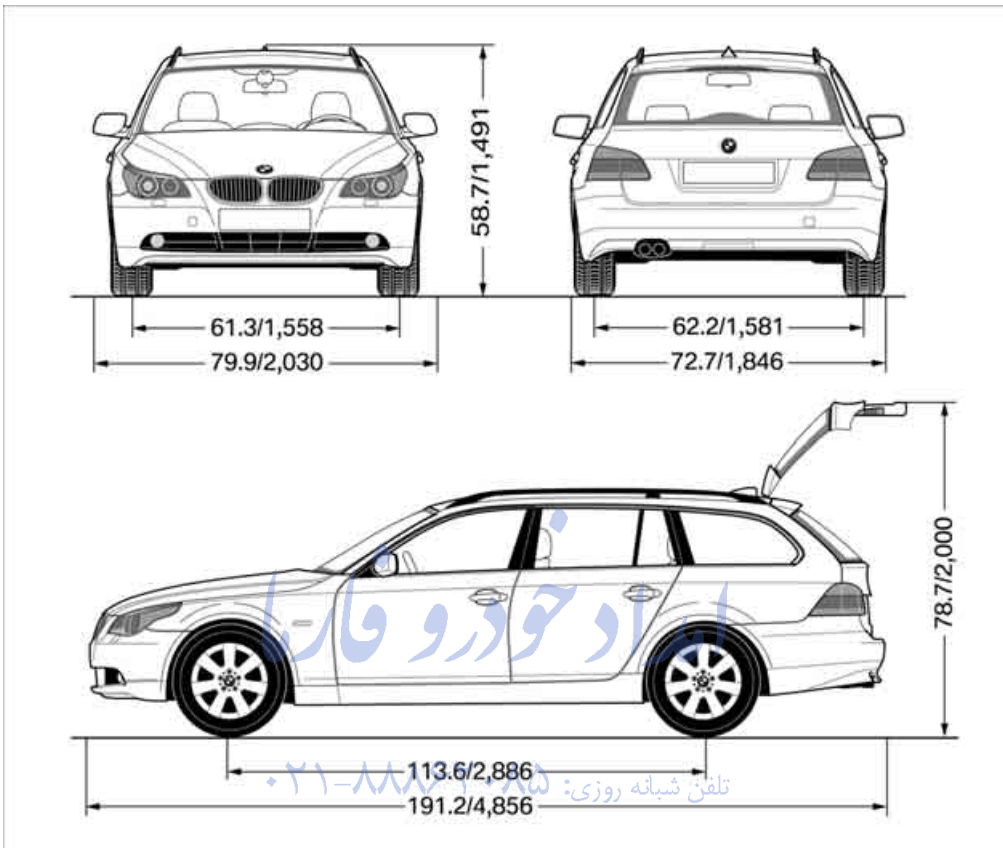


All dimensions are given in inches/mm.

Vehicle height with xDrive: 58.3 in/1,482 mm

Smallest turning circle diam.: 37.5 ft/11.4 m, with xDrive 39 ft/11.9 m

FarmaSOS.com



www.farmasus.com

All dimensions given in inches/mm. Smallest turning circle diam.: 39 ft/11.9 m

FarmasUS.com

Weights

Sedan		525i	530i	550i
Curb weight				
▷ Manual transmission, SMG	lbs./kg	3,395/1,540	3,450/1,565	3,902/1,770
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	3,439/1,560	3,472/1,575	3,924/1,780
Approved gross vehicle weight				
▷ Manual transmission, SMG	lbs./kg	4,497/2,040	4,552/2,065	5,004/2,270
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	4,541/2,060	4,575/2,075	5,026/2,280
Load	lbs./kg	1,102/500	1,102/500	1,102/500
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,161/980	2,227/1,010	2,469/1,120
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,601/1,180	2,601/1,180	2,679/1,215
Approved roof load capacity	lbs./kg	220/100	220/100	220/100
Luggage compartment capacity	cu ft/l	18.4/520	18.4/520	18.4/520

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Sedan		525xi	530xi
Curb weight			
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	3,593/1,630	3,670/1,660
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	3,638/1,650	3,704/1,680
Approved gross vehicle weight			
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	4,696/2,130	4,762/2,160
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	4,740/2,150	4,806/2,180
Load	lbs./kg	1,102/500	1,102/500
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,315/1,050	2,315/1,050
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,646/1,200	2,646/1,200
Approved roof load capacity	lbs./kg	220/100	220/100
Luggage compartment capacity	cu ft/l	18.4/520	18.4/520

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Sports Wagon		530xi
Curb weight		
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	3,858/1,750
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	3,891/1,765
Approved gross vehicle weight		
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	5,049/2,290
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	5,082/2,305
Load	lbs./kg	1,190/540
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,381/1,080
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,866/1,300
Approved roof load capacity	lbs./kg	220/100
Luggage compartment capacity	cu ft/l	17.7-58.3/500-1,650

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank	gal/liters	approx. 18.5/70	Fuel grade: page 195
of that reserve	gal/liters	approx. 2.1/8	
Window cleaning system			For more details: page 66
▷ Sedan	US quarts/liters	approx. 3.2/3	
▷ incl. headlamp washer system	US quarts/liters	approx. 5.3/5	
▷ Sports Wagon	US quarts/liters	approx. 5.3/5	
Engine with oil filter change			BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil. Oil grades: page 206
▷ 525i/xi, 530i/xi	US quarts/liters	6.9/6.5	
▷ 550i	US quarts/liters	8.5/8.0	

Short commands of voice command system*

With short commands you can carry out certain functions directly, regardless of which menu

item is selected. Here are the important short commands for the voice command system.

Assistance window

Function	Command
To open the assistance window 20	›Assistance window‹
To select the display in the assistance window 20	›Assistance window map facing north‹, ›Assistance window map direction of travel‹, ›Assistance window arrow display‹, ›Assistance window perspective‹, ›Assistance window current position‹, ›Assistance window trip computer‹ or ›Assistance window onboard info‹
To change scale in assistance window 146	›Assistance window scale ... feet‹ or ›Assistance window scale ... miles‹

Communication

Function	Command
To open phone 175	›Phone‹
To dial phone number 179	›Dial number‹
To display phone book 179	›A to Z‹
To select from the phone book 179	›Call ...‹ or ›Dial name‹
To display "Top 8" 180	›Top 8‹
To redial 179	›Redial‹
To display "Received calls" 180	›Received calls‹
To display "Missed calls" 180	›Missed calls‹
To display "Bluetooth" 176	›Bluetooth‹
To open BMW Assist 189	›BMW Assist‹
To open "BMW Service" 189	›BMW Service‹
To open "BMW Contact" 181	›BMW Contact‹
To open "BMW Contact Numbers" 181	›BMW Contact numbers‹

Navigation

Function	Command
To open navigation system 133	›Navigation‹
To open "Enter address" 133	›Enter address‹
To open "New destination" 133	›New destination‹
To display "Input map" 137	›Input map‹
To display destination list 139	›Destination list‹
To display address book 140	›Address book‹
To display route criteria 142	›Route preference‹
To start destination guidance 144	›Start guidance‹
To end destination guidance 144	›Stop guidance‹
To display arrow display 145	›Arrow display‹
To display map display 146	›Map‹ ,›Map facing north‹ , ›Map direction of travel‹ or ›Perspective‹
To change scale 146	›Scale ... miles‹ or ›Scale ... feet‹
To display roads or towns/cities along route 146	›Route list‹
To switch on voice instructions 147	›Navigation info on‹
To switch off voice instructions 147	›Navigation info off‹
To repeat voice instructions 147	›Repeat navigation info‹
To open route 142, 146	›Route‹
To open "New route" 148	›New route‹
To display current position 148	›Current position‹

Onboard info

Function	Command
To open "Car Data" 76	›Car data‹
To display computer 76	›Onboard info‹
To display trip computer 76	›Trip computer‹
To open speed limit 81	›Limit‹
To open stopwatch 81	›Stopwatch‹

Entertainment

Function	Command
Tone control 153	›Audio‹
To switch on radio 156	›Radio on‹, ›FM on‹ or ›AM on‹
To open "FM" 156	›FM menu‹
To open "AM" 156	›AM menu‹
To open "All stations" 156	›FM All stations‹
To select radio station 156	›Station ...‹ or ›Choose station‹
To open "Presets" 156	›FM presets‹ or ›AM presets‹
To select stored radio station 156	›Choose preset‹
To open "Manual" 157	›FM manual‹, ›AM manual‹ or ›Choose frequency‹, ›Frequency ... Megahertz‹
To open strongest radio stations 157	›AM Autostore‹
To open "WB" 160	›Weatherband menu‹
To switch on weatherband 160	›Weatherband on‹
To select a weatherband station 160	›Choose weatherband station‹
To open "SAT" 162	›SAT radio menu‹
To switch on satellite radio 162	›SAT radio‹
To open "Presets" of satellite radio 163	›SAT radio presets‹
To open "All channels" of satellite radio 162	›SAT radio all channels‹
To open "Categories" of satellite radio 162	›SAT radio categories‹
To open CD player 165	›CD menu‹
To switch on CD player 165	›CD‹
To open CD changer 165	›CD-changer menu‹
To switch on CD changer 165	›CD-changer‹
To select CD 165	›CD 1...6‹
To select music track 166	›CD track ...‹
To select CD and music track 166	›CD 1...6 track ...‹

Climate

Function	Command
To adjust temperature distribution for front seat heating 50	›Seat heater distribution‹
To open "Vent settings" 107	›Vent settings‹
To open "Automatic programs" 106	›Automatic programs‹
To open "Parked car ventilation" 109	›Parked car operation‹
To open "Automatic ventilation" 109	›Automatic ventilation‹
To display activation times 109	›Activation time‹

i menu

Function	Command
To open "Door locks" 30, 32	›Door locks‹
To open "Steering wheel buttons" 53	›Steering wheel buttons‹
To open "Lighting" 64	›Lighting‹
To open "Communication settings" 187	›Communication settings‹
To open "BMW Service settings" 187	›BMW Service settings‹
To open "BMW Service" 189	›BMW service‹
To open "Service requirements" 77, 188	›Service requirements‹
To open "Service" 77, 188	›Service‹
To display "Check Control messages" 80	›Check Control messages‹
To open "Display settings" 82	›Display settings‹
To open "Head-Up Display" 97	›Head-up display‹
To activate speed limit 81	›Limit on‹
To deactivate speed limit 81	›Limit off‹
To set brightness of Control Display 83	›Brightness‹
To open "Units" 84	›Units‹
To open "Languages" 84, 147	›Language‹
To open "Time" 82	›Time‹
To open "Date" 83	›Date‹
To open "PDC" 85	›PDC‹
To open "FTM" 90	›FTM‹
To open "TPM" 92	›TPM‹
To open "HDC" 88	›HDC‹
To open "Entertainment settings" 153	›Entertainment settings‹

Function	Command
Activating BMW Night Vision 99	›Night Vision on‹
Deactivating BMW Night Vision 99	›Close Night Vision‹
Displaying settings for BMW Night Vision 99	›Night Vision configuration‹

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Everything from A to Z

Index

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions, and indicates where to find them in the text.

A

- ABS Antilock Brake System **86**
- ACC, refer to Active cruise control **67**
- Acceleration assistant for SMG Sequential Manual Transmission **63**
- Accessories **6**
- Acoustic signal, refer to Check Control **79**
- Activated-charcoal filter **109**
- "Activation time" for parked-car ventilation **109**
- Active cruise control **67**
- indicator lamp **70**
 - radar sensor **71**
 - selecting distance **69**
 - warning lamps **71**
- Active head restraints, front **49**
- Active seat **51**
- Active seat ventilation **51**
- Active steering **93**
- warning lamp **94**
- Adapter for spare key **28**
- Adaptive brake lamps, refer to Brake force display **94**
- Adaptive Head Light **102**
- "Add digits" for mobile phone **180**
- "Address book" for navigation system **140**
- Address for navigation
- deleting **141**
 - entering **133, 136**
 - selecting **141**
 - storing **140**
 - storing current position **140**
- "Add to address book" **140**
- "Add to destination list" **136**
- Adjusting active backrest width **47**
- Adjusting confirmation signals for locking and unlocking **31**
- Adjusting the tone during audio operation, refer to Tone control **153**
- Adjusting thigh support **46**
- Adjustment in audio mode
- front-to-rear **154**
 - right/left balance **154**
- "After door opened" **48**
- "After unlocking" **48**
- Airbags **94**
- sitting safely **45**
 - warning lamp **96**
- Air circulation, refer to Air recirculation **108**
- Air distribution
- automatic **106**
 - manual **107**
- Airing, refer to Ventilation **108**
- Air recirculation
- AUC Automatic recirculated-air control **108**
 - recirculated-air mode **108**
- "Air recirculation on / off" **53**
- Air vent outlets of automatic climate control **105**
- Air vents **105**
- refer to Ventilation **108**
- Air volume **107**
- AKI, refer to Fuel quality **195**
- Alarm system **37**
- avoiding unintentional alarms **38**
 - interior motion sensor **38**
 - switching off alarm **38**
 - switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor **38**
 - tilt alarm sensor **38**
- "All channels" **163**
- "All doors" **30**
- All-season tires, refer to Winter tires **202**
- "All stations", calling up with radio **156, 159**
- All-wheel drive, refer to xDrive **87**
- Alterations, technical, refer to For your own safety **5**
- Altering stretch of road **148**
- "AM", reception range **152, 156**
- Antenna for mobile phone **174**
- Antifreeze
- coolant **207**
 - washer fluid **66**
- Antilock Brake System ABS **86**
- Anti-theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system **37**
- Anti-theft system, refer to Central locking system **29**
- Approved axle loads, refer to Weights **229**
- Approved engine oils **206**
- Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights **229**
- Armrest, refer to Center armrest, rear **116**
- Around the center console **14**
- Around the steering wheel **10**

Arrival time
 – refer to Computer 76
 – refer to Starting destination guidance 144
 "Arrow display" for navigation system 145
 Ashtray
 – front 115
 – rear 115
 Assist, refer to
 BMW Assist 187
 Assistance systems, refer to
 Driving stability control systems 86
 Assistance window 20
 "Assist. window off" 21
 AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 108
 Audio 152
 – controls 152
 – switching on/off 152
 – tone control 153
 – volume 153
 "Audio", refer to Tone control 153
 "Audio Aux" 152, 171
 – on external audio device 171
 Audio device, external 114
 Automatic
 – air distribution 106
 – air volume 106
 – garage door opener 111
 – headlamp control 101
 – service notification 188
 – steering wheel adjustment, refer to Easy entry/exit 52
 – storing stations 157
 – tailgate operation 36
 Automatically switching between high beams and low beams, refer to High-beam assistant 103
 Automatic car washes 126
 – also refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 Automatic climate control 105
 – automatic air distribution 106
 – switching off 108

Automatic closing of doors, refer to Automatic soft closing 33
 Automatic curb monitor 52
 Automatic lighting
 – refer to Automatic headlamp control 101
 – refer to Daytime running lamps 102
 – refer to High-beam assistant 103
 – refer to Interior lamps 104
 – refer to Pathway lighting 101
 Automatic low-beam function, refer to High-beam assistant 103
 "Automatic programs" 106
 Automatic recirculated-air control AUC 108
 Automatic roll-up cover, Sports Wagon 117
 Automatic soft closing 33
 Automatic station search 157
 Automatic transmission with Steptronic 63
 – deactivating selector lever interlock 64
 – interlock 63
 – kick-down 64
 – selector lever interlock 63
 – shiftlock 63
 – sport program 64
 – tow-starting 222, 223
 – with comfort access 40
 "Automatic ventilation" 109
 AUTO program for automatic climate control 106
 "Autostore" on the radio 156, 158
 AUX-In
 – connection 114
 – refer to External audio device 171
 Average fuel consumption 75
 – setting the units 84
 Average speed, refer to Computer 75
 "Avoid ferries" for navigation system 143

"Avoid highways" for navigation system 143
 Avoiding freeways for navigation 142
 Avoiding unintentional alarms 38
 "Avoid tollroads" for navigation system 143
 Axle loads, refer to Weights 229
 "A - Z" 180

B

Backrest contour, refer to Lumbar support 46
 Backrests, refer to Seats 46
 Backrest width adjustment 46
 Back seats, refer to Rear seats
 Backup lamps, refer to
 Reverse gear 61
 – replacing bulbs 213
 "Balance", refer to Tone control 154
 Balance, refer to Tone control 154
 Band-aids, refer to First-aid kit 220
 Bass, refer to Tone control 153
 "Bass", tone control 154
 Battery, refer to Vehicle battery 217
 – jump starting 220
 Battery disposal
 – remote control with comfort access 40
 – vehicle battery 218
 Battery replacement, remote control with comfort access 40
 Being towed 222
 Belts, refer to Safety belts 49
 Beverage holder, refer to Cup holders 114
 Blower, refer to Air volume 107
 "BMW Assist" 189

BMW Assist **187**
 – enabling **187**
 – services offered **188**
 "BMW Contact" **182**
 "BMW Contact Numbers" **182**
 BMW homepage **4**
 BMW maintenance system **209**
 BMW Night Vision **98**
 – activating **99**
 – cleaning camera **100**
 – cleaning camera, refer to Wiper system **66**
 – deactivating **99**
 – making settings **99**
 "BMW Service" **189**
 "BMW Service settings" **188**
 BMW website **4**
 Bottle holder, refer to Cup holders **114**
 Brake Assistant, refer to DBC Dynamic Brake Control **86**
 Brake fluid **207**
 – warning lamp **207**
 Brake force display **94**
 Brake lamps
 – brake force display **94**
 – replacing bulbs **213**
 Brake pads **208**
 – breaking-in **124**
 Brake rotors **126**
 Brakes
 – ABS Antilock Brake System **86**
 – brake fluid **207**
 – brake force display **94**
 – brake pads **208**
 – breaking-in **124**
 – handbrake **60**
 – warning lamps **13**
 Brake system **124, 207**
 – brake fluid level **207**
 – brake pads **124, 208**
 – breaking-in **124**
 – disk brakes **126**
 – warning lamp **207**

Braking
 – CBC Cornering Brake Control **86**
 – DBC Dynamic Brake Control **86**
 – electronic brake-force distribution **86**
 – refer to Braking safely **125**
 Braking safely **125**
 Breakdown assistance **189**
 Breakdown services, refer to Roadside Assistance **220**
 Breaking-in the clutch **124**
 Breaking-in the differential **124**
 Break-in period **124**
 "Brightness" **83**
 – with BMW Night Vision **100**
 Brightness of Control Display **83**
 Button for starting engine **58**
 Buttons on steering wheel **11**

C

California Proposition 65
 Warning **6**
 "Call" **180**
 Call
 – accepting **179**
 – displaying accepted **180**
 – ending **179**
 – in absence **180**
 – starting **179**
 Calling
 – from phone book **179**
 – from Top 8 list **180**
 – redialing **180**
 – refer to telephone operating instructions
 Can holder, refer to Cup holders **114**
 Capacities **230**
 Capacity
 – of cargo area **229**
 – of luggage compartment **229**
 Car battery, refer to Vehicle battery **217**

Car care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 Car-care products, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 "Car Data" **76**
 Care **210**
 – refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 Cargo
 – refer to Loading **126**
 – securing **128**
 – securing with ski bag **120**
 Cargo area
 – capacity **229**
 – emergency operation, refer to Opening manually **36**
 – increasing **117**
 – opening/closing, refer to Tailgate **35**
 – opening from inside **35**
 – opening from outside **35**
 – opening with remote control **31**
 Cargo area cover, refer to Roll-up cover
 Caring for artificial leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 Caring for leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 Caring for light-alloy wheels, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 Caring for the carpet, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 Caring for the vehicle finish, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 Car key, refer to Keys/remote control **28**
 Car phone **174**
 – installation location, refer to Center armrest **113**
 – refer to Mobile phone **174**
 – refer to separate operating instructions

- Car radio, refer to Radio [156](#)
- Car wash [126](#)
 - also refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 - with comfort access [40](#)
- Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system [124](#)
- "Categories" [163](#)
- CBC Cornering Brake Control [86](#)
- CBS Condition Based Service [209](#)
- "CD" [152](#), [165](#)
- CD changer [165](#)
 - controls [152](#)
 - fast forward/reverse [169](#)
 - installation location [169](#)
 - playing a track [167](#)
 - random order [168](#)
 - repeating a track [168](#)
 - selecting a CD [165](#)
 - selecting a track [166](#)
 - switching on/off [152](#)
 - tone control [153](#)
 - volume [153](#)
- CD player [165](#)
 - controls [152](#)
 - fast forward/reverse [169](#)
 - playing a track [167](#)
 - random order [168](#)
 - repeating a track [168](#)
 - selecting a track [166](#)
 - switching on/off [152](#)
 - tone control [153](#)
 - volume [153](#)
- Center armrest
 - front [113](#)
 - rear [116](#)
- Center brake lamp [214](#)
- Center console [14](#)
- "Central locking" [30](#)
- Central locking system [29](#)
 - comfort access [38](#)
 - from inside vehicle [32](#)
- Changes, technical
 - refer to For your own safety [5](#)
 - refer to Parts and accessories [6](#)
- Changing language on Control Display [84](#)
- Changing units of measure on Control Display [84](#)
- Changing wheels [201](#), [215](#)
- CHECK button [80](#)
- Check Control [79](#)
- "Check Control messages" [80](#)
- Check Gas Cap [195](#)
- Checking the air pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure [196](#)
- Child-restraint fixing system LATCH [56](#)
- Child restraints [54](#)
- Child restraint systems [54](#)
- Child-safety lock [57](#)
- Child seats [54](#)
- Chime, refer to Check Control [79](#)
- Chock [215](#)
- Chrome parts, care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
- Cigarette lighter [115](#)
- Cleaning, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
- "Climate" [50](#), [106](#)
- Clock [74](#)
 - 12h/24h mode [83](#)
 - setting time and date [82](#)
- Closing
 - from inside [32](#)
 - from outside [30](#)
- Closing fuel filler cap [195](#)
- Clothes hooks [114](#)
- Cockpit [10](#)
- Cold start, refer to Starting engine [59](#)
- "Comfort", active backrest width adjustment [47](#)
- Comfort access [38](#)
 - observe in car wash [40](#)
 - replacing battery [40](#)
- Comfort area, refer to Around the center console [14](#)
- Comfort operation
 - windows with comfort access [39](#)
 - with comfort access [39](#)
- Comfort seat [46](#)
- "Communication" [178](#), [189](#)
- "Communication settings" [188](#)
- Compact Disc
 - refer to CD changer [165](#)
 - refer to CD player [165](#)
- Compact wheel
 - inflation pressure [197](#)
 - wheel change [216](#)
- Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock [58](#)
- Compartments
 - in cargo area [118](#)
 - refer to Storage area package [119](#)
 - refer to Storage compartments [114](#)
- Compressed audio files [165](#)
- Computer [75](#)
 - displays on Control Display [76](#)
 - hour signal [83](#)
- "Concert hall", refer to Tone control [154](#)
- Condition Based Service CBS [209](#)
- "Confirmation" [31](#)
- Connecting car vacuum cleaner, refer to Connecting electrical devices [115](#)
- Consumption, refer to Average fuel consumption [75](#)
- Consumption indicator
 - Energy Control [75](#)
- Consumption statistics, refer to Average fuel consumption [75](#)
- "Continue guidance to destination?" [145](#)
- "Contrast" with BMW Night Vision [100](#)

Control Center, refer to iDrive **16**
 Control Display, refer to iDrive **16**
 – setting brightness **83**
 Controller, refer to iDrive **16**
 Controls, refer to Cockpit **10**
 Convenience operation
 – glass sunroof **31**
 – windows **31**
 Convenience start, refer to Starting engine **59**
 Coolant **207**
 – checking level **207**
 – temperature **74**
 Cooling, maximum **107**
 Cornering Brake Control
 CBC **86**
 Country of destination for navigation **134**
 Courtesy lamps **104**
 Cover, roll-up cover, Sports Wagon **117**
 Cradle for telephone or mobile phone **113**
 Cruise control **66, 67**
 – active cruise control **67**
 Cruising range **75**
 Cup holders **114**
 Curb weight, refer to Weights **229**
 Current fuel consumption **75**
 "Current position" **148**
 Current position
 – displaying **148**
 – entering **140**
 – storing **140**
 "Curve mode" with BMW Night Vision **100**
 "Customer Relations" **182, 190**
 Cylinders, refer to Engine data **226**

D

Dashboard, refer to Cockpit **10**
 Data **226**
 – capacities **230**
 – dimensions **227**
 – engine **226**
 – technical data **226**
 – weights **229**
 "Date" **83**
 Date **74**
 – display format **83**
 – retrieval **74**
 – setting **83**
 "Date format" **83**
 Daytime running lamps **102**
 DBC Dynamic Brake Control **86**
 "Deactivated" **48**
 Deactivating selector lever interlock **64**
 Decommissioning the vehicle, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 Defect
 – fuel filler door **194**
 – glass sunroof **42**
 – luggage compartment lid **34**
 – tailgate **36**
 Defrosting windows **107**
 Defrosting windows and removing condensation **107**
 Defrost position, refer to Defrosting windows **107**
 "Delete address book" for navigation system **142**
 "Delete all numbers" for mobile phone **181**
 "Delete data" for navigation system **142**
 "Delete" for mobile phone **181**
 Destination address
 – deleting **141**
 – entering **133, 136**

Destination for navigation
 – destination list **139**
 – entering via voice **136**
 – entry **133**
 – selecting from address book **141**
 – selecting using information **138**
 – storing **140**
 Destination guidance **144**
 – bypassing route sections **148**
 – canceling voice instructions **53**
 – changing specified route **142**
 – displaying routes **145**
 – distance and arrival **144**
 – interrupting **144**
 – starting **144**
 – terminating/continuing **144**
 – voice instructions **147**
 – volume of voice instructions **147**
 Destination list for navigation **139**
 Destinations recently driven to **139**
 "Details" in audio mode **167**
 "Dial" for mobile phone **179**
 "Dial number" **179**
 "Diamond button" **53**
 Diamond button **53**
 Digital clock **74**
 Digital radio, refer to High Definition Radio **160**
 Dimensions **227**
 Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals **64**
 Direction announcements, refer to Voice instructions **147**
 Direction instructions, refer to Voice instructions **147**
 Directory for navigation, refer to Address book **140**
 Displacement, refer to Engine data **226**

- "Display" **84**
- Display, refer to iDrive **16**
- Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting **104**
- "Display off" **21**
- Displays, refer to Instrument cluster **12**
- "Display settings" **82**
- Displays on the windshield, refer to Head-Up Display **96**
- Disposal
 - battery of remote control with comfort access **40**
 - vehicle battery **218**
- Distance, refer to Computer **76**
- Distance cruise control, refer to Active cruise control **67**
- "Distance to dest." **76**
- Distance to destination, refer to Computer **76**
- Distance warning, refer to PDC Park Distance Control **85**
- Divided rear seat back, refer to Through-loading system **116**
- Door entry lighting **104**
- Door key, refer to Keys/remote control **28**
- Door lock **32**
- Door locking, acknowledgment signals **31**
- "Door locks" **30**
- Doors
 - manual operation **32**
 - remote control **30**
- DOT Quality Grades **200**
- Draft-free ventilation **108**
- Drinks holder, refer to Cup holders **114**
- Drive mode **62**
- "Driver's door only" **30**
- Driving lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams **101**
- Driving notes **124**
- Driving route, refer to Displaying route **145**
- Driving stability control systems **86**
- Driving through water **125**
- Driving tips, refer to Driving notes **124**
- Dry air, refer to Cooling function **107**
- Drying the air, refer to Cooling function **107**
- DSC Dynamic Stability Control **86**
 - indicator lamp **13, 87**
- DTC Dynamic Traction Control **87**
 - activating **87**
 - indicator lamp **13, 87**
- DVD for navigation **132**
- Dynamic Brake Control DBC **86**
- Dynamic Drive **89**
- Dynamic Driving Control **62**
- Dynamic Stability Control DSC **86**
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC **87**
- Easy entry/exit **52**
 - backrest width **47**
- Eject button, refer to Buttons on CD player **152**
- Electrical malfunction
 - door lock **32**
 - driver's door **32**
 - fuel filler door **194**
 - glass sunroof, electric **42**
 - luggage compartment lid **34**
 - panorama glass sunroof **44**
 - tailgate **36**
- Electric steering wheel adjustment **52**
- Electronic brake-force distribution **86**
- Electronic oil level check **205**
- Emergency call **219**
- Emergency operation, refer to Manual operation
 - door lock **32**
 - driver's door **32**
 - fuel filler door **194**
 - glass sunroof **42**
 - luggage compartment lid **34**
 - panorama glass sunroof **44**
 - selector lever interlock, automatic transmission **64**
 - tailgate **36**
- Emergency release for luggage compartment lid in luggage compartment **34**
- Emergency services, refer to Roadside Assistance **220**
- "Emission inspect." **78**
- "Enable services" **188**
- "End call" **179**
- "End Night Vision" **100**
- Energy-conscious driving, refer to Energy Control **75**
- Energy Control **75**
- Engine
 - breaking-in **124**
 - data **226**
 - overheated, refer to Coolant temperature **74**
 - speed **226**
 - starting **59**
 - starting, comfort access **38**
 - starting difficulties **59**
 - switching off **60**
- Engine compartment **205**
- Engine coolant **207**
- Engine oil
 - adding **206**
 - additives, refer to Approved engine oils **206**
 - approved engine oil **206**
 - checking oil level **205**
 - electronic oil level check **205**
 - "Engine oil level" **206**
- Engine output, refer to Engine data **226**
- Engine overheating, refer to Coolant temperature **74**
- Engine speed **226**

- Engine starting, refer to Starting engine **59**
- "Enter address" **134, 140**
- Entering destination via town/city name **134**
- Entering the address **133, 136**
- Entering the intersection **135**
- Entering town/city for navigation **134**
- Entering zip code for navigation **135**
- "Entertainment" **152**
- "Entertainment settings" **153, 160**
- Entertainment sound output on/off **153**
- Entry map for destination **137**
- "Equalizer", refer to Tone control **155**
- Equalizer, refer to Tone control **155**
- "ESN" **162**
- ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control **86**
- Event Data Recorders **210**
- Exhaust system, refer to Hot exhaust system **124**
- Exterior mirrors **51**
- automatic dimming feature **125**
 - automatic heating **51**
 - folding in and out **51**
 - tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror **52**
- External audio device **114, 171**
- Eye for tow-starting and towing, refer to Tow fitting **221**
- F**
- "Fader", refer to Tone control **154**
- Fader, refer to Tone control **154**
- Failure messages, refer to Check Control **79**
- False alarm, refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms **38**
- Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts **49**
- warning lamp **49**
- Fastest route for navigation **142**
- "Fast route" for navigation **143**
- "Favorites" calling up with radio **159**
- First aid, refer to First-aid kit **220**
- First-aid kit **220**
- Flashing during locking/unlocking, refer to Setting confirmation signals **31**
- Flashlight, refer to Rechargeable flashlight **113**
- Flat tire
- changing wheels **215**
 - compact wheel **216**
 - Flat Tire Monitor **89, 90**
 - run-flat tires **90, 93, 201**
 - TPM Tire Pressure Monitor **91**
- Flat Tire Monitor **89**
- false alarms **90**
 - initializing system **90**
 - show chains **203**
 - system limits **90**
 - warning lamp **90**
- Flat tires, refer to Tire condition **201**
- "FM", reception range **152, 156**
- FM, waveband **156**
- Fog lamps **104**
- indicator lamp **13, 104**
- Folding rear seat back **116, 117**
- Fold-over rear seat back **116, 117**
- Footbrake, refer to Braking safely **125**
- Footwell lamps **104**
- Forward, fast
- CD changer **169**
 - CD player **169**
- For your own safety **5**
- 4-wheel drive system, refer to xDrive **87**
- Freeway, refer to Route criteria **142**
- Front airbags **94**
- Front armrest, refer to Center armrest, front **113**
- Front passenger airbags, deactivating **95**
- Front seat adjustment **46**
- "FTM" **90**
- FTM, refer to Flat Tire Monitor **89**
- Fuel **195**
- capacity **230**
 - display **75**
 - high-quality brands **195**
 - quality **195**
 - specifications **195**
- Fuel clock, refer to Fuel gauge **75**
- Fuel consumption display, computer, average fuel consumption **75**
- Fuel display, refer to Fuel gauge **75**
- Fuel filler door **194**
- releasing in the event of electrical malfunction **194**
- "Full screen" with BMW Night Vision **100**
- Fuses **218**
- G**
- Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control **111**
- Gasoline, refer to Required fuel **195**
- Gasoline display, refer to Fuel gauge **75**

Gear changes
 – automatic transmission with Steptronic **63**
 – SMG Sequential Manual Transmission **62**

Gear display
 – automatic transmission with Steptronic **63**
 – SMG Sequential Manual Transmission **61**

Gearshift lever, manual transmission **60**

Gearshift lever positions, manual transmission **60**

General driving notes **124**

Glass sunroof, electric **41**
 – auto-remote operation from outside **32**
 – comfort operation with comfort access **39**
 – moving manually **42**
 – remote control **31**

Glove compartment **113**
 – lighting **113**
 – rechargeable flashlight **113**

GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system **132**

Grills, refer to Ventilation **108**

Grills of the automatic climate control **105**

Gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights **229**

H

Halogen lamps **212**

Handbrake **60**
 – indicator lamp **13, 60**

Hand lamp, refer to Rechargeable flashlight **113**

Hands-free system, refer to Microphone **14**

Hazard warning flashers **15**

HD, refer to High Definition Radio **160**

"HDC" **88**

HDC Hill Descent Control **88**

"HDC on" **88**

"HDC on / off" **53**

Head airbags **94**

Headlamp control, automatic **101**

Headlamp flasher **64**

Headlamps **101**
 – care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 – cleaning, refer to Wiper system **66**
 – replacing bulbs **212**

Head Light, refer to Adaptive Head Light **102**

Head restraints **48**
 – front head restraints, active **49**
 – sitting safely **45**

"Head-Up Display" **97**

Head-Up Display **96**

Heated
 – mirrors **51**
 – rear window **107**
 – seats **50**
 – steering wheel **52**

Heating **105**
 – exterior mirrors **51**
 – interior **105**
 – rear window **107**
 – residual heat **108**
 – seats **50**
 – steering wheel **52**

Heating with engine switched off, refer to Residual heat **108**

Heavy cargo, refer to Securing cargo **128**

Height, refer to Dimensions **227**

Height adjustment
 – seats **46**
 – steering wheel **52**

High-beam assistant **103**

High beams **102**
 – headlamp flasher **102**
 – indicator lamp **13**
 – replacing bulbs **212**

High Definition Radio **160**

High water, refer to Driving through water **125**

Hill Descent Control HDC **88**

Hills **126**

Holder for cups **114**

"Home address" for navigation system **142**

Homepage **4**

Hood **204**

Horn **10**

Hot exhaust system **124**

"Hour memo" **83**

"House number" for destination entry **136**

Hydraulic brake assistant, refer to DBC Dynamic Brake Control **86**

Hydroplaning **125**

I

IBOC, refer to High Definition Radio **160**

Ice, refer to Outside temperature warning **74**

ID3 tag, refer to Information on track **167**

iDrive **16**
 – assistance window **20**
 – automatic climate control with expanded scope **106**
 – changing date and time **82**
 – changing language **84**
 – changing menu page **19**
 – changing settings **82**
 – changing units of measure and display type **84**
 – confirming selection or entry **19**
 – controller **16**
 – controls **16**
 – displays, menus **17**
 – selecting menu item **19**
 – setting brightness **83**
 – start menu **17**
 – status information **20**
 – symbols **18**

Ignition **58**
 – switched off **58**
 – switched on **58**

Ignition key, refer to Keys/remote control **28**

- Ignition key position 1, refer to Radio readiness [58](#)
 - Ignition key position 2, refer to Ignition on [58](#)
 - Ignition lock [58](#)
 - starting engine with comfort access [40](#)
 - Independent ventilation, refer to Parked car ventilation [109](#)
 - Indicator/warning lamps
 - active steering [94](#)
 - airbags [96](#)
 - brake fluid [207](#)
 - brake pads [208](#)
 - DSC [13, 87](#)
 - DTC [13, 87](#)
 - Flat Tire Monitor [90](#)
 - fog lamps [13](#)
 - safety belt warning [49](#)
 - TPM Tire Pressure Monitor [92](#)
 - Indicator and warning lamps [13](#)
 - Individual air distribution [107](#)
 - Individually programmable buttons on steering wheel [53](#)
 - Individual settings, refer to Personal Profile [29](#)
 - Inflation pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure [196](#)
 - Inflation pressure monitoring
 - refer to Flat Tire Monitor [89](#)
 - refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor [91](#)
 - Information
 - on another location [138](#)
 - on current position [138](#)
 - on destination location [138](#)
 - "Information" for navigation system [138](#)
 - "Information on destination" [140](#)
 - "Initializing..." [90](#)
 - Initializing
 - Flat Tire Monitor [90](#)
 - radio, refer to Storing stations [158](#)
 - refer to Power failure [218](#)
 - refer to Setting time and date [82](#)
 - seat, mirror and steering wheel memory [47](#)
 - "Input map" [138](#)
 - Installation location
 - CD changer [169](#)
 - mobile phone [113](#)
 - navigation drive [132](#)
 - Instructions for navigation system, refer to Voice instructions [147](#)
 - Instrument cluster [12](#)
 - Instrument illumination, refer to Instrument lighting [104](#)
 - Instrument lighting [104](#)
 - Instrument panel
 - refer to Cockpit [10](#)
 - refer to Instrument cluster [12](#)
 - Integrated key [28](#)
 - Integrated universal remote control [111](#)
 - Interesting destination for navigation [138](#)
 - "Interim time" [82](#)
 - Interior lamps [104](#)
 - switching on with remote control [31](#)
 - Interior motion sensor [38](#)
 - switching off [38](#)
 - Interior rearview mirror [52](#)
 - automatic dimming feature [125](#)
 - Interlock on automatic transmission [63](#)
 - Intermittent mode of the wipers [65](#)
- ## J
- Jacking points [216](#)
 - Joystick, refer to iDrive [16](#)
 - Jumping, refer to Jump starting [220](#)
 - Jump starting [220](#)
- ## K
- Keyless-Go, refer to Comfort access [38](#)
 - Keyless opening and closing, refer to Comfort access [38](#)
 - Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile [29](#)
 - "Keypad" [182](#)
 - Keys [28](#)
 - key-related settings, refer to Personal Profile [29](#)
 - Kick-down
 - automatic transmission with Steptronic [64](#)
 - SMG Sequential Manual Transmission [62](#)
 - Knock control [195](#)
- ## L
- Lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams [101](#)
 - Lamps and bulbs [212](#)
 - "Languages" [84](#)
 - for navigation system [147](#)
 - Lashing eyes, refer to Securing cargo [128](#)
 - Last destinations, refer to Destination list [139](#)
 - "Last seat pos." [48](#)
 - LATCH child-restraint fixing system [56](#)
 - Length, refer to Dimensions [227](#)
 - License plate lamp, replacing bulbs [215](#)
 - Light-emitting diodes LEDs [212](#)

- Lighter **115**
 Lighter socket **115**
 "Lighting" **65, 102**
 Lighting
 – instruments **104**
 – of the vehicle, refer to Lamps **101**
 – refer to High-beam assistant **103**
 Light switch **101**
 "Limit" **81**
 Loading
 – securing cargo **128**
 – stowing cargo **127**
 – vehicle **126**
 "Lock after driving" **33**
 Lock buttons in the doors, refer to Locking **33**
 Locking
 – from inside **33**
 – from outside **31**
 – setting confirmation signals **31**
 – without key, refer to Comfort access **38**
 Locking and unlocking doors
 – from inside **32**
 – from outside **30**
 – setting confirmation signals **31**
 Locking out, refer to Unlocking **39**
 Locking without key, refer to Comfort access **38**
 Low beams **101**
 – automatic **101**
 – replacing bulbs **212**
 Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support **46**
 Lug bolts **216**
 – tightening torque, refer to After mounting **217**
 – wrench **215**
- Luggage compartment
 – capacity **229**
 – emergency release **34**
 – locking separately **34**
 – opening/closing, refer to Luggage compartment lid/ tailgate **33**
 – opening from inside **33**
 – opening from outside **34**
 – opening with remote control **31**
 Luggage compartment cover, refer to Roll-up cover **117**
 Luggage compartment lid **33**
 – emergency operation, refer to Manual operation **34**
 – emergency release **34**
 – locking separately **34**
 – opening from inside **33**
 – opening from outside **34**
 – unlocking and locking from inside **32**
 – unlocking manually **34**
 Luggage net, refer to Separation net **118**
 Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack **128**
 Lumbar support **46**
 LW, waveband **156**
- M**
 M+S tires, refer to Winter tires **202**
 Maintenance
 – refer to Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models **209**
 – refer to Service requirements **77**
 – refer to Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models **209**
 Maintenance system **209**
 Malfunction warnings, refer to Check Control **79**
 Manual air distribution **107**
- Manually controlled recirculated air **108**
 Manual mode
 – automatic transmission with Steptronic **64**
 – SMG Sequential Manual Transmission **62**
 "Manual" on the radio **157**
 Manual operation
 – door lock **32**
 – driver's door **32**
 – fuel filler door **194**
 – glass sunroof **42**
 – luggage compartment lid **34**
 – panorama glass sunroof **44**
 – selector lever interlock, automatic transmission **64**
 Manual transmission **60**
 "Map direction of travel" **146**
 Map display **146**
 Map display facing north **146**
 "Map facing north" **146**
 Map for navigation
 – changing scale **146**
 – destination entry **137**
 Master key, refer to Keys/remote control **28**
 Maximum cooling **107**
 Maximum speed
 – for winter tires **202**
 – with compact wheel **217**
 Memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory **47**
 Menus, refer to iDrive **16**
 Microfilter **109**
 Microphone
 – for mobile phone **14**
 – for voice command system **14**
 Mirror dimming feature **125**
 Mirrors **51**
 – automatic curb monitor **52**
 – folding in and out **51**
 – heating **51**
 – memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory **47**

"Missed calls" **180**
 Missed calls **180**
 Mobile communications devices in vehicle **125**
 Mobile phone
 – accepted calls **180**
 – adjusting volume **178**
 – calling **179**
 – ending call **179**
 – installation location, refer to Center armrest **113**
 – missed calls **180**
 – operation via iDrive **178**
 – redialing **180**
 – refer to separate operating instructions
 – Top 8 **180**
 – touch tone dialing, refer to Tone dialing method **182**
 Mobile phones, use in the interior, refer to Mobile communications devices **125**
 Monitor, refer to iDrive **16**
 Monitoring pressure of tires, refer to Flat Tire Monitor **89**
 "Monitor on / off" **53**
 Most recent numbers for mobile phone **180**
 MP3, refer to Compressed audio files **165**
 Multi-function steering wheel, refer to Buttons on steering wheel **11**
 Multifunction switch
 – refer to Turn signals/headlamp flasher **64**
 – refer to Wiper/washer system **65**
 Music track, finding **167**
 "Mute on / off" **53**
 MW, waveband **156**

N

"Navigation" **76, 133**
 Navigation destination
 – home address **142**
 – manual entry **133**
 – selecting via map **137**
 Navigation drive, installation location **132**
 Navigation DVD **132**
 Navigation instructions, refer to Switching voice instructions on/off **147**
 Navigation system **132**
 – address book **140**
 – bypassing route sections **148**
 – destination entry **133**
 – destination guidance in assistance window **132**
 – destination list **139**
 – displaying current position **148**
 – entering a destination manually **133**
 – entering destination via voice **136**
 – last destinations **139**
 – opening **133**
 – route display **145**
 – route list **146**
 – searching for a special destination **138**
 – selecting destination using information **138**
 – selecting destination via map **137**
 – selecting route criteria **142**
 – starting destination guidance **144**
 – switching off, refer to Terminating/continuing destination guidance **144**
 – terminating/continuing destination guidance **144**
 – voice instructions **147**
 – volume adjustment **147**
 "Navigation voice instructions" **53**

"Navigation voice instructions on" **147**
 Neck support, refer to Head restraints **48**
 "New address" for navigation system **140**
 "New destination" **133, 137**
 New remote control **28**
 "New route" **148**
 New wheels and tires **201**
 "Next entertainment source" **53**
 Night Vision, refer to BMW Night Vision **98**
 Night vision device, refer to BMW Night Vision **98**
 "Night Vision on / off" **53**
 "Normal", active backrest width adjustment **47**
 Nozzles, refer to Windshield washer nozzles **66**
 Nylon rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing **221**

O

OBD socket **210**
 Octane ratings, refer to Fuel specifications **195**
 Odometer **74**
 Oil
 – additives, refer to Approved engine oils **206**
 – approved engine oils **206**
 – capacity **230**
 – consumption, refer to Checking engine oil level **205**
 – level **205**
 – refilling, refer to Adding engine oil **206**
 Oil change intervals, refer to Service requirements **77**
 "On a new destination" for navigation system **139**
 Onboard computer, refer to iDrive **16**
 "Onboard info" **76**
 Onboard toolkit **211**

"On destination" 139
 "On location" 139
 Opening and closing
 – comfort access 38
 – from inside 32
 – from outside 30
 – panorama glass sunroof 43
 – using remote control 30
 – using the door lock 32
 Operation by voice for mobile phone 183
 – adjusting volume 184
 – canceling 183
 – commands 183
 – correcting phone number 184
 – dialing phone number 184
 – placing a call 184
 – redialing 185
 – voice phone book 184
 "Options" 190
 Orientation menu, refer to Start menu 17
 Output, refer to Engine data 226
 Outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 108
 Outside temperature display 74
 – changing unit of measure 84
 – in computer 84

P

Panic mode 31
 Panorama glass sunroof 43
 – moving manually 44
 Park Distance Control PDC 85
 "Parked car operation" 109
 "Parked car ventilation" 109
 Parked car ventilation 109
 – activating activation time 110
 – preselecting activation times 109
 – switching on and off directly 109

Parking, vehicle 60
 Parking aid, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 85
 Parking assistant, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 85
 Parking brake, refer to Handbrake 60
 Parking lamps 101
 – replacing bulbs 213
 Parts and accessories 6
 Passenger airbags, deactivating, refer to Exception for front passenger seat 54
 Passenger-side exterior mirror, tilting down 52
 "Pathway lighting" 102
 Pathway lighting 101
 "PDC" 86
 "PDC display on" 86
 PDC Park Distance Control 85
 Personal Profile 29
 "Perspective" 146
 "Phone" 179
 Phone book 178
 Phone numbers
 – deleting from phone book 181
 – dialing 179
 – most recent numbers 180
 – selecting in phone book 180
 – Top 8 180
 Pinch protection system
 – glass sunroof, electric 42
 – panorama glass sunroof 43
 – power windows 41
 Plasters, refer to First-aid kit 220
 "Play"
 – in audio mode 166
 – on the radio 163
 Plug-in unit for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 58
 Pollen, refer to Microfilter/activated charcoal filter 109

Position
 – displaying 148
 – storing 140
 Power failure 218
 Power windows, refer to Windows 40
 Preselecting activation times of the parked car ventilation 109
 "Presets" on the radio 156
 Pressure, tires 196
 Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 91
 "Profile" 191
 Programmable buttons on steering wheel 53
 Protective function, refer to Pinch protection system
 – glass sunroof, electric 42
 – panorama glass sunroof 43
 – windows 41

R

Radio
 – Autostore 157
 – controls 152
 – High Definition Radio 160
 – sampling stations 157
 – satellite radio 161
 – selecting frequency manually 157
 – selecting reception range 152
 – selecting waveband 156
 – station search 157
 – station selection 156
 – station with the best reception 157
 – storing stations 158
 – switching on/off 152
 – tone control 153
 – volume 153
 – Weather Band, refer to Weather news flashes 159
 Radio key, refer to Keys/remote control 28

- Radio position, refer to Radio readiness [58](#)
- Radio readiness [58](#)
 - switched off [58](#)
 - switched on [58](#)
 - with comfort access [39](#)
- Rain sensor [65](#)
- "Random", random play sequence [168](#)
- "Random all" in audio mode [169](#)
- "Random directory" in audio mode [169](#)
- "RDS" [159](#)
- Reading lamps [104](#)
- Rear armrest, refer to Center armrest, rear [116](#)
- Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps [213](#)
 - replacing bulbs [213](#)
- Rear seat back, folding [116](#), [117](#)
- Rear seats
 - adjusting head restraints [49](#)
 - folding over backrest [116](#), [117](#)
 - heating [50](#)
- Rear ventilation [109](#)
- Rearview mirror [51](#)
- Rear window
 - changing wiper blade [211](#)
 - heating [107](#)
 - opening and closing on Sports Wagon [34](#)
 - roller sun blind, refer to Sun blinds [112](#)
 - window wiper on Sports Wagon [66](#), [126](#)
- Rear window safety switch [41](#)
- "Received calls" [180](#)
- Reception
 - quality [159](#)
 - radio stations [159](#)
 - regional station [157](#)
- Reception level of mobile phone, refer to Status information [20](#)
- Rechargeable flashlight [113](#)
- Recirculated-air mode
 - air recirculation [108](#)
 - AUC Automatic recirculated-air control [108](#)
- Reclining seat, refer to Backrest [46](#)
- Recording times, refer to Stopwatch [81](#)
- "Redial" for mobile phone [180](#)
- Reflectors, refer to Tail lamps [213](#)
- Refueling [194](#)
- Releasing, hood [204](#)
- "Relock door if not opened" [33](#)
- Remaining distance, refer to Cruising range [75](#)
- Remaining distance to destination, refer to Computer [76](#)
- Remote control [28](#)
 - battery replacement [40](#)
 - comfort access [38](#)
 - garage door opener [111](#)
 - luggage compartment lid [31](#)
 - malfunction [31](#), [40](#)
 - tailgate [31](#)
- Removing condensation on the windows [107](#)
- "Repeat directory" in audio mode [168](#)
- "Repeat" in audio mode [168](#)
- "Repeat track" in audio mode [168](#)
- Replacement fuses [218](#)
- Replacement of tires, refer to Changing wheels [215](#)
- Replacing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs [212](#)
- Replacing tires [202](#)
- Replacing wheels/tires, refer to New wheels and tires [201](#)
- Reporting an accident, refer to Initiating an emergency call [219](#)
- Reporting safety defects [7](#)
- Reserve warning, refer to Fuel gauge [75](#)
- Reservoir for washer systems [66](#)
- "Reset" [92](#)
 - stopwatch [82](#)
 - tone settings [155](#)
- Reset, refer to Resetting tone settings [155](#)
- Residual heat [108](#)
- Restraint systems
 - for children [54](#)
 - refer to Safety belts [49](#)
- Retaining straps, refer to Storage area package [119](#)
- Retreaded tires [202](#)
- Reverse, fast
 - CD changer [169](#)
 - CD player [169](#)
- Reverse gear
 - automatic transmission with Steptronic [63](#)
 - manual transmission [61](#)
 - SMG Sequential Manual Transmission [61](#)
- Road map [146](#)
- "Roadside Assistance" [182](#), [189](#)
- Roadside Assistance [220](#)
- Roadside parking lamps [102](#)
 - replacing bulbs [213](#)
- Roller sun blind, refer to Sun blinds [112](#)
- Roll-up cover, Sports Wagon [117](#)
- Roof load capacity [229](#)
- Roof-mounted luggage rack [128](#)
- Rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing [221](#)
- Rotary pushbutton, refer to iDrive [16](#)

- Route [142](#)
- bypassing sections [148](#)
- changing [142, 148](#)
- displaying [145](#)
- displaying arrow display [145](#)
- displaying map [146](#)
- displaying town [146](#)
- list [146](#)
- selecting [142](#)
- selecting criteria [142](#)

Route map, refer to Map display [146](#)

"Route preference", changing [142](#)

Route selection [142](#)

RSC, refer to Run-flat tires [201](#)

Run-flat tires [201](#)

- continuing driving with a damaged tire [90, 93](#)
- flat tire [90, 93](#)
- new wheels and tires [201](#)
- tire inflation pressure [90, 93, 196](#)
- tire replacement [201, 202](#)

S

Safety [5](#)

Safety belts [49](#)

- damage [50](#)
- sitting safely [45](#)
- warning lamp [49](#)

Safety belt tensioners

- refer to Airbags [94](#)
- refer to Safety belts [49](#)

Safety systems

- ABS Antilock Brake System [86](#)
- airbags [94](#)
- DSC Dynamic Stability Control [86](#)
- safety belts [49](#)

Satellite radio [161](#)

- enabling channel [162](#)
- selecting channel [162](#)
- storing channel [162](#)

"SAT" with radio [152, 162](#)

"Save current destination" [142](#)

"Scan"

- sampling stations [157](#)
- sampling tracks [167](#)

Scan

- CD changer [167](#)
- CD player [167](#)
- radio [157](#)

"Scan all" in audio mode [167](#)

"Scan directory" in audio mode [167](#)

Screen, refer to iDrive [16](#)

Screw thread for tow fitting [222](#)

SDARS, refer to Satellite radio [161](#)

"Seat heater distribution" [50](#)

Seats [46](#)

- active backrest width adjustment [47](#)
- adjusting the seats [46](#)
- comfort seat [46](#)
- easy entry/exit [47](#)
- heating [50](#)
- lumbar support [46](#)
- memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory [47](#)
- sitting safely [45](#)
- storing the setting [47](#)
- thigh support [46](#)
- ventilation, refer to Active seat ventilation [51](#)

Securing load

- refer to Securing cargo [128](#)
- with ski bag, refer to Securing cargo [120](#)

Securing load

- refer to Securing cargo [128](#)
- with ski bag, refer to Securing cargo [120](#)

"Select as destination" [139](#)

"Select current speed" [81](#)

Selecting audio sources, refer to Operation via iDrive [152](#)

Selecting distance for active cruise control [69](#)

Selecting frequency manually [157](#)

Selecting menu items [19](#)

Selecting new scale for navigation [146](#)

Selecting route [142](#)

Selection options with navigation system [142](#)

Selector lever

- automatic transmission with Steptronic [63](#)
- SMG Sequential Manual Transmission [61](#)

Selector lever interlock, refer to Shiftlock

– automatic transmission with Steptronic [63](#)

– SMG Sequential Manual Transmission [61](#)

Selector lever positions

- automatic transmission with Steptronic [63](#)
- SMG Sequential Manual Transmission [61](#)

Self-leveling suspension [89](#)

Separation net [118](#)

Sequential Manual Transmission SMG [61](#)

"Service" [77, 188, 205](#)

Service, refer to Roadside Assistance [220](#)

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models [209](#)

Service interval indicator, refer to Service requirements [77](#)

"Service notification" [189](#)

"Service Request" [182, 190](#)

"Service

requirements" [78, 188, 206](#)

Service requirements [77](#)

– also refer to CBS Condition Based Service [209](#)

"Service Status" [188](#)

"Set"

- in audio mode [152](#)
- on trip computer [77](#)

"Set date" [83](#)

"Set service date" [78](#)

"Set time" [83](#)

- Settings
 - BMW Night Vision [99](#)
 - changing on Control Display [82](#)
 - clock, 12h/24h mode [83](#)
 - configuring, refer to Personal Profile [29](#)
- Setting speed limit [81](#)
- Setting time, refer to Preselecting activation time [109](#)
- "Set tire pressure" [90](#)
- Shifting gears
 - automatic transmission with Steptronic [64](#)
 - SMG Sequential Manual Transmission [62](#)
- Shiftlock
 - automatic transmission with Steptronic [63](#)
 - SMG Sequential Manual Transmission [61](#)
- Shift paddles [62](#)
- Short commands of voice command system [231](#)
- "Short route" for navigation [143](#)
- Short route in navigation, refer to Selecting route [142](#)
- Shoulder support [46](#)
- "Show current position" [138](#)
- "Show destination position" [138](#)
- Shuffled, refer to Random
 - CD changer [168](#)
 - CD player [168](#)
- Side airbags [94](#)
- Side marker lamps, replacing bulbs [213](#)
- Side turn signals, replacing bulbs [213](#)
- Side window blinds, refer to Sun blinds [112](#)
- Signal horn, refer to Horn [10](#)
- Sitting safely [45](#)
 - with airbags [45](#)
 - with head restraint [45](#)
 - with safety belts [45](#)
- Ski bag [120](#)
- Sliding/tilt sunroof
 - refer to Glass sunroof, electric [41](#)
 - refer to Panorama glass sunroof [43](#)
- Slope assistant, refer to Starting assistant [125](#)
- SMG Sequential Manual Transmission [61](#)
 - acceleration assistant [63](#)
 - breaking-in [124](#)
 - Dynamic Driving Control [62](#)
 - gear display [61](#)
 - kick-down [62](#)
 - shiftlock [61](#)
 - towing [222](#)
 - tow-starting [223](#)
- Snow chains [203](#)
- Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface [210](#)
- Socket for remote control, refer to Ignition lock [58](#)
- Sockets, refer to Connecting electrical devices [115](#)
- Soft closure aid, refer to Automatic soft closing [33](#)
- Song search with CD, refer to Playing a track [167](#)
- SOS, refer to Initiating an emergency call [219](#)
- Spare fuses [218](#)
- Spare key [28](#)
 - adapter [28](#)
- Spare remote control [28](#)
- Spare wheel
 - refer to Changing wheels [215](#)
 - refer to Compact wheel [216](#)
- Special oils, refer to Approved engine oils [206](#)
- Specified oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils [206](#)
- Speed
 - with compact wheel [217](#)
 - with winter tires [202](#)
- Speed-dependent volume [154](#)
- Speed limit warning, refer to Speed limit [81](#)
- Speedometer [12](#)
- "Speed volume", refer to Tone control [154](#)
- "Sport", active backrest width adjustment [47](#)
- Sport program, refer to Dynamic Driving Control [62](#)
- Sports Wagon
 - automatic roll-up cover [117](#)
 - automatic tailgate operation [36](#)
 - compartments in cargo area [118](#)
 - increasing cargo area [117](#)
 - opening rear window [34](#)
 - opening tailgate [35](#)
 - panorama glass sunroof [43](#)
 - rear window wiper [66](#)
 - rear window wiper, changing wiper blade [211](#)
 - releasing fuel filler door in event of electrical malfunction [194](#)
 - roll-up cover [117](#)
 - roll-up cover for cargo area [117](#)
 - self-leveling suspension [89](#)
 - separation net [118](#)
 - socket in cargo area [116](#)
 - storage area package [119](#)
 - tail lamps, replacing bulbs [214](#)
- Stability control, refer to Driving stability control systems [86](#)
- "Star button" [53](#)
- Star button [53](#)
- Start/Stop button [58](#)
- "Start" for stopwatch [82](#)
- "Start guidance" [136](#), [144](#)
- Starting, refer to Starting engine [59](#)
- Starting assistance, refer to Jump starting [220](#)
- Starting assistant [125](#)
- Starting difficulties
 - jump starting [220](#)
 - refer to Special starting conditions [59](#)

- Starting off on slopes, refer to Starting assistant **125**
 - Start menu, iDrive **17**
 - "Start route guidance" **138**
 - "Start service" **189**
 - "State / Province" for destination entry **134**
 - "State inspection" **78**
 - Station, refer to Radio **156**
 - "Stations", presets **163**
 - "Status" **78**
 - Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing **5**
 - Steering wheel
 - adjustment **52**
 - buttons on steering wheel **11**
 - easy entry/exit **52**
 - heating **52**
 - lock **58**
 - locking **58**
 - memory **47**
 - programmable buttons **53**
 - "Steering wheel buttons" **53**
 - Steering-wheel shift buttons, refer to Shift paddles **62**
 - Steering with variable ratio, refer to Active steering **93**
 - Steptronic, refer to Automatic transmission with Steptronic **63**
 - "Stop" for stopwatch **82**
 - "Stopwatch" **82**
 - Stopwatch **81**
 - Storage area package **119**
 - Storage compartments **114**
 - "Store in address book" for navigation system **140**
 - "Store" on the radio **158, 163**
 - Storing current position **140**
 - Storing radio stations **158**
 - Storing sitting position, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory **47**
 - Storing tires **202**
 - Straps, refer to Loading **128**
 - "Street" for destination entry **135**
 - Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires **196**
 - Sun blinds **112**
 - "Surround Settings", refer to Tone control **154**
 - SW, waveband **156**
 - Switches, refer to Cockpit **10**
 - Switching between high beams and low beams, automatic, refer to High-beam assistant **103**
 - Switching cooling function on and off **107**
 - Switching off engine **60**
 - Switching off tilt alarm sensor **38**
 - Switching on
 - audio **152**
 - CD changer **152**
 - CD player **152**
 - radio **152**
 - Switching on hour signal **83**
 - Swiveling headlamps, refer to Adaptive Head Light **102**
 - Symbols **4**
 - indicator/warning lamps **13**
- ## T
- Tachometer **74**
 - "Tailgate" **36**
 - Tailgate **33, 35**
 - automatic operation **36**
 - locking and unlocking from inside **32**
 - opening from inside, Sports Wagon **35**
 - Tail lamps **213**
 - replacing bulbs **213**
 - Tank contents, refer to Capacities **230**
 - Target cursor for navigation **138**
 - Technical alterations, refer to For your own safety **5**
 - Technical data **226**
 - Telematic, refer to TeleService, BMW Assist **187**
 - Telephone, refer to Mobile phone **174**
 - "Telephone list" **53**
 - TeleService **187**
 - enabling **187**
 - services offered **188**
 - Temperature
 - adjusting in upper body region **106**
 - adjusting with automatic climate control **106**
 - of coolant, refer to Coolant temperature **74**
 - Temperature display
 - outside temperature **74**
 - setting units **84**
 - temperature warning **74**
 - Temperature warning **74**
 - Tempomat, refer to Cruise control **66**
 - "Terminate services" **190**
 - "Text language" **84**
 - "Theater", refer to Tone control **154**
 - The individual vehicle **5**
 - Third brake lamp, refer to Center brake lamp **214**
 - Through-loading system **116**
 - Tightening torque of the lug bolts, refer to After mounting **217**
 - Tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror **52**
 - "Time" **83**
 - "Time format" **83**
 - Timer, refer to Preselecting activation time **109**
 - "Timer 1" for parked car ventilation **110**
 - "Timer 2" for parked car ventilation **110**
 - Tire inflation pressures **196**
 - Tire pressure loss **90, 91**
 - Tire pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor **89**
 - Tire Pressure Monitor TPM **91**
 - Tire Quality Grading **200**

- Tire replacement, new wheels and tires [201](#)
 - Tires
 - age [200](#)
 - air loss [90, 92](#)
 - breaking-in [124](#)
 - changing [201](#)
 - condition [201](#)
 - damage [201](#)
 - flat tire, refer to Changing wheels [215](#)
 - inflation pressure [196](#)
 - new wheels and tires [201](#)
 - pressure monitoring [89](#)
 - pressure monitoring, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor [91](#)
 - replacing [215](#)
 - retreaded tires [202](#)
 - run-flat tires [201](#)
 - size [199](#)
 - tread [201](#)
 - wear indicators [201](#)
 - wheel/tire combination [201](#)
 - winter tires [202](#)
 - "Tone" [153](#)
 - Tone dialing method [182](#)
 - Tone in audio mode
 - adjusting [153](#)
 - middle setting [155](#)
 - Tone on locking/unlocking [31](#)
 - Tools, refer to Onboard toolkit [211](#)
 - "Top 8" for mobile phone [180](#)
 - Torque
 - engine [226](#)
 - lug bolts, refer to After mounting [217](#)
 - Touch tone dialing, refer to Tone dialing method [182](#)
 - Tow fitting [221](#)
 - Towing [221](#)
 - tow fitting [221](#)
 - "Town / City" for destination entry [134](#)
 - Tow-starting [221, 223](#)
 - "TPM" [92](#)
 - TPM Tire Pressure Monitor [91](#)
 - resetting system [92](#)
 - system limits [91](#)
 - warning light [92](#)
 - Tracks
 - random play sequence [168](#)
 - sample scan [167](#)
 - Track width, refer to Dimensions [227](#)
 - Traction-assist feature, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control [86](#)
 - Traction control, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control [86](#)
 - Traffic congestion, refer to Bypassing route sections [148](#)
 - Transmission
 - automatic transmission with Steptronic [63](#)
 - deactivating selector lever interlock on automatic transmission with Steptronic [64](#)
 - manual transmission [60](#)
 - SMG Sequential Manual Transmission [61](#)
 - starting assistant [125](#)
 - Transporting children safely [54](#)
 - Transport securing device, refer to Securing cargo [128](#)
 - Tread depth, refer to Minimum tire tread [201](#)
 - Treble, refer to Tone control [153](#)
 - "Treble", tone control [154](#)
 - "Trip computer" [77](#)
 - Trip computer [76](#)
 - Trip-distance counter, refer to Trip odometer [74](#)
 - "Triple turn signal activation" [65](#)
 - Trip odometer [74](#)
 - Turning circle, refer to Dimensions [227](#)
 - Turn signals [64](#)
 - indicator lamp [12](#)
 - replacing bulbs [213](#)
- ## U
- Underbody protection, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 - Uniform Tire Quality Grading/UTQR [200](#)
 - "Units" [84](#)
 - Units
 - average fuel consumption [84](#)
 - temperature [84](#)
 - Universal garage-door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control [111](#)
 - Universal remote control [111](#)
 - "Unlock button" [30](#)
 - Unlocking
 - from inside [33](#)
 - from outside [30](#)
 - without key, refer to Comfort access [38](#)
 - Unlocking without key, refer to Comfort access [38](#)
 - "Update services" [190](#)
 - "Use current location as address" [140, 142](#)
 - Used batteries
 - refer to Disposal [218](#)
 - refer to Replacing battery [40](#)

V

- Valve screw caps, refer to
 - After mounting **217**
- Vehicle
 - battery **217**
 - breaking-in **124**
 - care **210**
 - care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 - dimensions **227**
 - loading **126**
 - parking **60**
 - washing, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
 - weights **229**
- Vehicle jack **215**
- jacking points **216**
- Vehicle position, refer to
 - Displaying current position **148**
- "Vehicle settings" for unlocking **30**
- Ventilation **108**
 - draft-free **108**
 - in the rear **109**
 - while stationary **109**
- Venting, refer to
 - Ventilation **108**
- Vent outlets of the automatic climate control **105**
- Vents, refer to Ventilation **108**
- "Vent settings" **107**
- Voice, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions **147**
- Voice command system **22**
 - short commands **231**
- Voice instructions for navigation system **147**
 - muting **53**
 - repeating **53, 147**
 - switching on/off **53, 147**
 - volume **147**
- Voice phone book **184**

- Volume **152**
 - audio sources **152**
 - mobile phone **178**
 - setting speed-dependent **154**
 - voice instructions **147**

W

- Warning lamps, refer to
 - Indicator and warning lamps **13**
- Warning messages, refer to
 - Check Control **79**
- Warning triangle **219**
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models **209**
- Washer fluid **66**
 - capacity of the reservoir **66**
- Washer fluid reservoir **66**
- Water on roads, refer to
 - Driving through water **125**
- Waveband for radio **156**
- "WB" **152, 160**
- Wear indicators in tires, refer to
 - Minimum tread depth **201**
- Weather news flashes **159**
- Website **4**
- Weights **229**
- Wheel/tire combination, refer to
 - New wheels and tires **201**
- Wheel/tire damage **201**
- Wheelbase, refer to
 - Dimensions **227**
- Wheels and tires **196**
- Width, refer to
 - Dimensions **227**
- Windows **40**
 - auto-remote operation from outside **32**
 - comfort operation with comfort access **39**
 - convenience operation **31**
 - rear window, Sports Wagon **34**
 - safety switch **41**
- Windshield
 - cleaning, refer to Wiper system **66**
 - defrosting, refer to Defrosting windows **107**
 - displays, refer to Head-Up Display **96**
- Windshield washer system
 - refer to Wiper system **65**
 - windshield washer nozzles **66**
- Windshield wipers, refer to
 - Washer system **65**
 - wiper blade replacement **211**
- Winter tires **202**
 - setting speed limit **81**
 - storage **202**
- Wiper blade replacement **211**
- Wiper system **65**
 - rain sensor **65**
 - washer fluid **66**
 - windshield washer nozzles **66**
- "With highways" for navigation system **143**
- Word matching principle for navigation **143**
- Working in the engine compartment **204**
- Wrenches/screwdrivers, refer to Onboard toolkit **211**

X

- xDrive **87**
- Xenon lamps **213**
 - replacing bulbs **213**

Z

- "Zoom" with BMW Night Vision **100**

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Refueling

So that you will have important specifications available when you stop to refuel, we recommend that you supplement the following tables with data which apply to your vehicle. Consult the index for individual specifications.

Fuel

Designation

Please enter your preferred fuel here.

Engine oil

Quality

Tire inflation pressure

	Summer tires Front	Rear	Winter tires Front	Rear
Up to 4 persons				
5 persons or 4 plus luggage				

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

More about BMW



bmwusa.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲-۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

01 410 012 211 ue



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com